

AGENDA

Council
Tuesday 22 November 2022 at 10.30am

Northland Regional Council Agenda

Meeting to be held in the Council Chamber
36 Water Street, Whangārei
on Tuesday 22 November 2022, commencing at 10.30am

Recommendations contained in the council agenda are NOT council decisions. Please refer to council minutes for resolutions.

RĪMITI (Item)	Page
1.0 NGĀ MAHI WHAKAPAI / HOUSEKEEPING	
<i>Key Health and Safety points to note:</i>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the fire alarm goes off – exit down the stairwell to the assembly point which is the visitor carpark.• Earthquakes – drop, cover and hold• Visitors please make sure you have signed in at reception, and that you sign out when you leave. Please wear your name sticker.• The toilets are on the opposite side of the stairwell.• Please adhere to the recommended Covid alert guidance that applies.	
2.0 KARAKIA TIMATANGA – TAUĀKI Ā ROTO / OPENING KARAKIA	
3.0 NGĀ WHAKAPAHĀ / APOLOGIES	
4.0 NGĀ WHAKAPUAKANGA / DECLARATIONS OF CONFLICTS OF INTEREST	
5.0 NGĀ WHAKAAE MINITI ME TE MAHERE MAHI / COUNCIL MINUTES AND ACTION SHEET	
5.1 Confirmation of Minutes - 25 October 2022	6
6.0 NGĀ RIPOATA PUTEA / FINANCIAL REPORTS	
6.1 Financial Report to 31 October 2022	11
6.2 Update to Financial Delegations - November 2022	15
7.0 NGĀ TAKE / DECISION MAKING MATTERS	
7.1 Confirmation of governance structure, membership and councillor portfolios	21
7.2 Annual Report on the Biosecurity Operational Plan	61
7.3 Regional Rates Collection - update to 30 September 2022	147
7.4 Council submission - National direction for plantation and exotic carbon afforestation	151
7.5 Council submissions - Draft Kaipara District Plan and Far North District Plan	162
8.0 NGĀ RIPOATA MAHI / OPERATIONAL REPORTS	
8.1 Health and safety report	181

8.2	Chief Executive’s Report to Council	191
8.3	Reporting on Long Term Plan 2021-2031 Performance Measures for Quarter One of the 2022/23 Year	240
9.0	KAUPAPA Ā ROTO / BUSINESS WITH THE PUBLIC EXCLUDED	246
9.1	Human Resources Report - September and October 2022	
9.2	Purchase of Properties for Awanui Flood Scheme Upgrade	

<p>ACC - Accident Compensation Corporation</p> <p>ALGIM - Association of Local Government Information Management</p> <p>AMA - Aquaculture Management Area</p> <p>AMP - Asset Management Plan/Activity Management Plan</p> <p>AP - Annual Plan</p> <p>BOI - Bay of Islands</p> <p>BOPRC - Bay of Plenty Regional Council</p> <p>CAPEX - Capital Expenditure (budget to purchase assets)</p> <p>CBEC - Community, Business and Environment Centre</p> <p>CCO - Council Controlled Organisation</p> <p>CCTO - Council Controlled Trading Organisation</p> <p>CDEM - Civil Defence Emergency Management</p> <p>CEEF - Chief Executives Environment Forum</p> <p>CEG - Co-ordinating Executive Group</p> <p>CEO - Chief Executive Officer</p> <p>CIMS - Co-ordinated Incident Management System (emergency management structure)</p> <p>CMA - Coastal Marine Area</p> <p>CPCA - Community Pest Control Areas</p> <p>CRI - Crown Research Institute</p> <p>DHB - District Health Board</p> <p>DOC - Department of Conservation</p> <p>DP - District Plan</p> <p>E350 - Extension 350 programme</p> <p>ECA - Environmental Curriculum Award</p> <p>ECAN - Environment Canterbury</p> <p>EECA - Energy Efficiency Conservation Authority</p> <p>EF - Environment Fund</p> <p>EMA - Employers and Manufacturers Association</p> <p>EOC - Emergency Operations Centre</p> <p>EPA - Environmental Protection Authority</p> <p>ETS - Emissions Trading Scheme</p> <p>FDE - Farm Dairy Effluent</p> <p>FNDC - Far North District Council</p> <p>FNHL - Far North Holdings Limited</p> <p>FPP - First Past the Post</p> <p>GE - Genetic Engineering</p> <p>GIS - Geographic Information System</p> <p>GMO - Genetically Modified Organism</p> <p>HBRC - Hawke's Bay Regional Council</p> <p>Horizons - Brand name of Manawatu-Wanganui Regional Council</p> <p>HR - Human Resources</p> <p>HSNO - Hazardous Substances & New Organisms Act</p> <p>HSWA - Health and Safety at Work Act 2015</p> <p>IHEMP - Iwi/Hapū Environmental Management Plan</p> <p>ILGACE - Iwi and Local Government Chief Executives Forum</p> <p>IPPC - Invited Private Plan Change</p> <p>IRIS - Integrated Regional Information System</p> <p>KDC - Kaipara District Council</p> <p>KPI - Key Performance Indicator</p> <p>LAWA - Land, Air, Water Aotearoa</p> <p>LEA - Local Electoral Act 2001</p> <p>LGA - Local Government Act 2002</p> <p>LGNZ - Local Government New Zealand</p> <p>LGOIMA - Local Government Official Information & Meetings Act 1987</p> <p>LIDAR - Light detection and ranging</p> <p>LTI - Long time injury</p> <p>LTP - Long Term Plan</p> <p>MBIE - Ministry of Business, Innovation & Employment</p> <p>MFE - Ministry for the Environment</p> <p>MFL - Māori Freehold Land</p> <p>MHWS - Mean High Water Springs</p> <p>MMH - Marsden Maritime Holdings Limited</p> <p>MNZ - Maritime New Zealand</p> <p>MOH - Ministry of Health</p> <p>MOT - Ministry of Transport</p> <p>MPI - Ministry for Primary Industries</p>	<p>MSD - Ministry of Social Development</p> <p>MTAG - Māori Technical Advisory Group (a subgroup of TTMAC)</p> <p>NCMC - National Crisis Management Centre</p> <p>NDHB - Northland District Health Board</p> <p>NEMA - National Emergency Management Agency</p> <p>NES - National Environmental Standards</p> <p>NFT - Northland Forward Together</p> <p>NGO - Non-Governmental Organisation</p> <p>NIF - Northland Intersectoral Forum</p> <p>NINC - Northland Inc. Limited</p> <p>NIWA - National Institute of Water and Atmosphere</p> <p>NORTEG - Northland Technical Advisory Group</p> <p>NPS - National Policy Statement</p> <p>NPS-FM - National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management</p> <p>NZCPS - New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement</p> <p>NZTA - Waka Kotahi New Zealand Transport Agency</p> <p>NZTE - New Zealand Trade and Enterprise</p> <p>NZWWA - New Zealand Water and Wastes Association</p> <p>OFI - Opportunity for Improvement</p> <p>OPEX - Operating Expenditures</p> <p>OSH - Occupational Safety & Health</p> <p>OTS - Office of Treaty Settlements</p> <p>PCBU - Person Conducting Business or Undertaking</p> <p>PGF - Provincial Growth Fund</p> <p>PPE - Personal Protective Equipment</p> <p>RAP - Response Action Plan</p> <p>RBI - Regional Broadband Initiative</p> <p>RFI - Request for Information</p> <p>RFP - Request for Proposal</p> <p>RLTP - Regional Land Transport Plan</p> <p>RMA - Resource Management Act 1991</p> <p>RMG - Resource Managers Group (Regional Councils)</p> <p>RMZ - Riparian Management Zone</p> <p>ROI - Return on Investment</p> <p>RP - Regional Plan</p> <p>RPMP - Regional Pest Management Plan</p> <p>RPMS - Regional Pest Management Strategy</p> <p>RPS - Regional Policy Statement</p> <p>RPTP - Regional Public Transport Plan</p> <p>RRSAP - Regional Road Safety Action Plan</p> <p>RSG - Regional Sector Group</p> <p>RSHL - Regional Software Holdings Ltd</p> <p>RTC - Regional Transport Committee</p> <p>RTO - Regional Tourism Organisation</p> <p>SIG - Special Interest Group</p> <p>SIPO - Statement of Investment Policy and Objectives</p> <p>SITREP - Situation Report</p> <p>SOE - State of Environment (or) State Owned Enterprise</p> <p>SOI - Statement of Intent</p> <p>STV - Single Transferable Vote</p> <p>TAG - Technical Advisory Group</p> <p>TKoT - Te Kahu o Taonui</p> <p>Tier 1 - Site level plan or response for an oil spill</p> <p>Tier 2 - Regional level plan or response to an oil spill</p> <p>Tier 3 - National level plan or response to an oil spill</p> <p>TLA - Territorial Local Authority – City & District Councils</p> <p>TON - Top of the North (regions)</p> <p>TTMAC - Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party</p> <p>TTNEAP - Tai Tokerau Northland Economic Action Plan</p> <p>TMP - Treasury Management Plan</p> <p>TOR - Terms of Reference</p> <p>TPK - Te Puni Kōkiri (Ministry of Māori Development)</p> <p>TWWAG - Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group</p> <p>UNISA - Upper North Island Strategic Alliance</p> <p>WDC - Whangarei District Council</p> <p>WRC - Waikato Regional Council</p> <p>WSMP - Workplace Safety Management Practices</p>
--	--



Tauāki ā roto

Tēnei au
Tēnei mātou
He kaikaunihera
He kawenga i ngā whakataunga
I ngā tikanga
Ki uta, ki tai
Kia rewa ai ngā iwi katoa o
Te Taitokerau

Haumie hui e
TĀIKI E!

Here I am
Here we are
Your councillors
The bearers of sound
decision making power
Reaching inland and coastal
To uplift all peoples of
Northland

Bring forth unity
Tis Done!

TITLE: Confirmation of Minutes - 25 October 2022

From: Meloney Tupou, Maori Governance and Engagement Support Admin

Authorised by Auriole Ruka, Pou Manawhakahaere - GM Governance and Engagement, on
Group Manager/s: 15 November 2022

Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation

That the minutes of the council meeting held on 25 October 2022 be confirmed as a true and correct record.

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: Confirmation of Minutes - 25 October 2022 [↓](#) 

Inaugural Council Meeting
25 October 2022

Northland Regional Council Minutes

Inaugural meeting held in the Council Chamber
36 Water Street, Whangārei
on Tuesday 25 October 2022, commencing at 10.30am

Tuhinga/Present:

Councillors:

John Blackwell
Joe Carr
Jack Crow
Geoff Crawford
Peter-Lucas Jones
Amy Macdonald
Marty Robinson
Tui Shortland
Rick Stolwerk

I Tae Mai/In Attendance:

Full Meeting

Independent Financial Advisor (*via audio visual link*)
Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer
Pou Taumatua - GM Corporate Services
Pou Manawhakahaere - GM Governance and Engagement
Pou Whakaritenga - GM Regulatory Services
Pou Tiaki Taiao - GM Environmental Services
Pou Tiaki Hapori - GM Community Resilience
Pou Tiaki Pūtaiao - GM Biosecurity
Human Resources Manager
Marketing and Engagement Manager
Communications Manager
Community Engagement Assistant
Executive Assistant to the Chair
Executive Assistant to Chief Executive Officer
Governance Specialist

Part Meeting

Kaiārahi Tikanga Māori – Māori Cultural Technical Advisor

The Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer declared the meeting open at 10.32am and proceedings commenced with a karakia by the Kaiārahi Tikanga Māori – Māori Cultural Technical Advisor.

Ngā whakapahā/Apologies (Item 1.0)

There were no apologies.

Inaugural Council Meeting
25 October 2022

Nga whakapuakanga/Declarations of Conflicts of Interest (Item 2.0)

It was advised that councillors should make declarations item-by-item as the meeting progressed.

Announcement of the results of Triennial Elections 2022 (Item 5.1)

Report from Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer

Secretarial Note: The Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer announced the names of the successful candidates of the 2022 triennial Elections by constituency.

Declaration by councillors (Item 5.2)

Report from Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer

Secretarial Note:

- *The Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer invited each councillor (in alphabetical order by surname) to step forward, read the declaration out loud and sign the declaration document. The Chief Executive Officer then witnessed each declaration with his signature. Councillors Jones and Shortland executed their declaration in both Te Reo and English.*
- *The newly sworn in councillors were acknowledged by a round of applause.*

Election of Chairperson (Item 5.3)

Report from Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer

Moved (Stolwerk/Craw)

1. That the report 'Election of Chairperson' by Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer and dated 17 October 2022, be received.

Carried

It was further moved (Carr/Macdonald)

2. That in the event more than one nomination for Chairperson is received, "System A" as specified in Clause 25 of Schedule 7 to the Local Government Act be used for the election of the Chairperson.

Carried

Secretarial Note: The Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer called for nominations for election to the office of Chair.

Moved (Stolwerk/Jones)

- 2a. That Councillor Tui Shortland be nominated Chair of the Northland Regional Council.

It was further moved (Crawford/Blackwell)

- 2b. That Councillor Joe Carr be nominated Chair of the Northland Regional Council.

Council Meeting
25 October 2022

Secretarial Note:

- *Councillor Carr extended appreciation to Councillors Crawford and Blackwell, however declined the nomination for the office of Chair.*
- *Given no further nominations were forthcoming the Chief Executive Officer declared Councillor Tui Shortland as the elected Chair of the Northland Regional Council.*

Declaration by Chairperson (Item 5.4)

Report from Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer

Moved (Stolwerk/Jones)

That the report 'Declaration by Chairperson' by Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer, and dated 17 October 2022, be received.

Carried

Secretarial Note:

- *The Chief Executive Officer invited the newly elected Chair, Tui Shortland, to make and sign the declaration to enable her to carry out her duties as Chairperson; as required by law. The Chair executed her declaration in both Te Reo and English. The Chief Executive Officer then witnessed the declaration with his signature.*
- *The Chair then presided over the remainder of the council meeting.*

Election of Deputy Chairperson (Item 5.5)

Report from Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer

Moved (Stolwerk/Robinson)

1. That the report 'Election of Deputy Chairperson' by Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer, and dated 17 October 2022, be received.

Carried

It was further moved (Blackwell/Macdonald)

2. That in the event more than one nomination for the Deputy Chairperson is received, System A as specified in Clause 25 of Schedule 7 to the Local Government Act be used for the election of the Deputy Chairperson.

Carried

Secretarial Note: The Chair called for nominations for election to the office of Deputy Chair.

Moved (Macdonald/Stolwerk)

- 2a. That Councillor Jack Craw be nominated Deputy Chair of the Northland Regional Council.

Secretarial Note: Given no further nominations were forthcoming the Chair declared Councillor Jack Craw as the elected Deputy Chair of the Northland Regional Council.

Inaugural Council Meeting
25 October 2022

Legislation affecting councillors (Item 5.6)

Report from Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer

Moved (Stolwerk/Jones)

That the report 'Legislation affecting councillors' by Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer, and dated 17 October 2022, be received.

Carried

Fixing the date of the first ordinary meeting of council (Item 5.7)

Report from Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist

Moved (Stolwerk/Craw)

1. That the report 'Fixing the date of the first ordinary meeting of council' by Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist and dated 17 October 2022, be received.
2. That the ordinary meetings of the Northland Regional Council for the remainder of the 2022 be held at the council offices, 36 Water Street, Whangārei on Tuesday 22 November 2022 and Tuesday 13 December 2022 commencing at 10.30am.
3. That a full meeting schedule (*including the meeting dates of council's subordinate bodies*) be presented to council for its consideration once the governance structure has been confirmed.

Carried

Whakamutunga (Conclusion)

The inaugural council meeting concluded at 11.09am

TITLE: Financial Report to 31 October 2022

From: Taka Skipwith, Financial Accountant

Authorised by Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services, on 15
Group Manager/s: November 2022

Whakarāpopototanga / Executive summary

This report is to inform council of the year to date (YTD) financial result to October 2022. Council has achieved a YTD surplus after transfers to and from reserves of \$3.4M (September YTD \$3.3M) which is \$552K (September \$662K YTD) favourable to budget.

Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation

That the report 'Financial Report to 31 October 2022' by Taka Skipwith, Financial Accountant and dated 10 November 2022, be received

Background/Tuhinga

SUMMARY OPERATING RESULTS			
	000's ACTUAL YTD	000's BUDGET YTD	000's VARIANCE YTD
Revenue (including other gains)	\$26,658	\$26,706	(\$49)
Expenditure	\$21,087	\$21,350	\$263
NET (COST)/SURPLUS BEFORE TRANSFERS FROM/(TO) RESERVES	\$5,571	\$5,356	\$214
Transfer From (To) Special Reserves	(\$2,213)	(\$2,551)	(\$337)
NET (COST)/SURPLUS AFTER TRANSFERS FROM/(TO) RESERVES	\$3,358	\$2,806	\$552

Managed Funds

No managed fund gains or losses have been accrued for the month of October, due to the Eriksens Global report not yet available. An update on fund performance for October will be included in the November financial report. The gains/losses reported here are for September YTD against October YTD budgets.

	000's ACTUAL YTD	000's BUDGET YTD	000's VARIANCE YTD
Short Term Funds	\$241	\$224	\$16
Long Term Funds	\$704	\$1,295	(\$590)
TOTAL FUND GAINS/(LOSSES)	\$945	\$1,519	(\$574)
Transfer From (To) Special Reserves representing reinvestment	(\$0)	(\$364)	(\$364)
NET GAINS/(LOSSES) AFTER TRANSFERS FROM/(TO) RESERVES	\$945	\$1,155	(\$210)

Revenue

Year to date revenue is \$26.7M, which is \$49K or 0.02% below budget.

YTD REVENUE VARIANCE INDICATORS BY REVENUE TYPE			
	FAV / (UNFAV)		Commentary
	\$	%	
Rates	\$75,723	0.5%	
User Fees and Sundry	\$169,436	6.3%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Higher than budgeted management fees for coastal, mooring, and land use compliance of \$229K Higher than budgeted monitoring marine and coastal biosecurity fees of \$96K Offset by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower than budgeted bus fare box income of \$116K Lower than budgeted consent application fees of \$47K
Grants and Subsidies	\$146,300	21.9%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Higher than budgeted subsidies for predator free projects of \$70K Higher than budgeted subsidies for NZTA of \$204K Offset by ; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower than budgeted subsidies for sustainable Hill Country and Regional Priorities (SHaRP) project of \$100K Lower than budgeted subsidies for wilding conifers works of \$16K
Investment Interest Income and Other Gains	\$76,623	102.8%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Higher than budgeted interest on term deposit of \$73K, as a result of a derisking strategy placing a larger portion of the portfolio into term deposits
Investment Property Income	\$56,897	19.8%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Higher than budgeted rent income on investment properties \$57K
Dividend	\$291	0.00%	
Long Term Fund Gains	(\$590,438)	(45.6%)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Actual September YTD returns of 1.0% are lower than the budgeted 1.51% (6.05% annualised). Noting there have been no long term fund nor short term fund gains accrued for the month of October in this report
Short Term Fund Gains	\$16,411	7.32%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Actual September YTD returns of 1.5% are higher than the budgeted 1.04% (4.15% annualised).
Total	(\$48,757)	(0.2%)	

Expenditure

Year to date expenditure is \$21.0M, which is \$263K or 1.2% below budget.

YTD EXPENDITURE VARIANCE INDICATORS BY COUNCIL ACTIVITY					
	FAV / (UNFAV)		Commentary	Offset by:	
	\$	%		Subsidies	Reserves
					Not offset FAV / (UNFAV)
Regulatory Services	(\$3,095)	(0.2%)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues Higher than budgeted expenditure relating to consent applications and monitoring Other small accumulated variances within this group 		\$149K (\$146K) (\$6K)
Environmental Services	\$122,844	3.1%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues Lower than budgeted expenditure for biodiversity dune lake projects Lower than budgeted consultancy for planning and policy Higher than budgeted expenditure on hydrology costs Higher than budgeted expenditure on Wairoa river improvements Higher than budgeted expenditure fresh water and awa improvements Higher than budgeted expenditure on urban awa project Other small accumulated variances within this group 	\$41K (\$88K)	\$297K \$32K (\$24K) (\$36K) (\$28K)
Biosecurity	\$123,767	4.0%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues Higher than budgeted expenditure on contract work on biossecurity projects Other small accumulated variances within this group 	(\$56K)	(\$59K) \$266K
Governance and Engagement	\$165,862	7.5%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues Other small accumulated variances within this group 		\$150K \$16K
Community Resilience	(\$12,037)	(0.3%)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues Higher than budgeted expenditure for transport, ticketing and promotion costs Lower than budgeted expenditure on field operations Lower than budgeted consultancy costs across community resilience Lower than budgeted interest expense relating to funding for river management and harbour safety Other small accumulated variances within this group 	(\$129K)	(\$77K) \$26K \$26K \$90K \$7K
Corporate Services	(\$112,543)	(2.1%)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower than budgeted salaries due to recruitment issues Higher than budgeted strategic review costs Higher than budgeted recruitment and training costs Higher than budgeted operational costs on council occupied buildings Other small accumulated variances within this group 	(\$88K)	\$51K (\$38K) (\$25K) (\$13K)
CEO Office	(\$21,711)	(2.0%)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Higher than budgeted salaries predominantly due final pay of former CEO Lower than budgeted expenditure on consultancy Lower than budgeted expenditure on CEO projects Lower than budgeted repairs and maintenance on investment properties Other small accumulated variances within this group 	\$14K	\$8K \$10K (\$21K)
Total	\$263,086	1.2%		(\$286K)	(\$103K) \$652K

Salary Variances

Across council there is a \$652K net favourable salaries variance predominantly due to the time to complete recruitment of vacant positions and new positions identified in the LTP (Long Term Plan).

Transfers to reserves

For the year to date there has been a net transfer **to** reserves of \$2.2M (September YTD \$1.6M) compared to a budgeted net transfer **to** reserves of \$2.5M (September YTD \$1.1M). The variance of \$337K is predominantly due to

- \$364K lower than budgeted transfers to externally managed fund reserves, due to lower than budgeted gains on short term and long-term funds to September YTD.

Capital Expenditure

Capital expenditure amounts to \$1.9M and is \$1.6M less than the corresponding budget at this stage of the year predominantly due to:

- Delays in the Awanui flood protection works programme (\$780K behind budget) because of contractors being denied access to site and unfavourable weather conditions.
- Delays in the Otiria-Moerewa flood mitigation spillway (\$719K behind budget) because of longer than anticipated negotiations with landowners in order to secure the land for the Pokapu bridge.

Both of these projects are targeted rate funded and are expected to be completed by December 2023 in-line with the extension granted by MBIE.

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Nil

TITLE: **Update to Financial Delegations - November 2022**

From: Anan Thiru, Accounting Assistant - Treasury and Projects and Simon Crabb, Finance Manager

Authorised by Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services, on 04
Group Manager/s: November 2022

Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga

This report seeks approval to ratify 2 council officers as new authorised bank signatories, and update the financial delegations prescribed in council's Delegations Manual.

The proposed updates are:

- ratify Taka Skipwith (Financial Accountant) as a bank signatory as she has replaced Vincent McColl
- ratify Ruben Wylie (GM – Environmental Services) as a bank signatory as he has replaced Jonathan Gibbard
- update the named CEO incumbent to Jonathan Gibbard as he has replaced Malcolm Nicolson
- remove the Acting Management Accountant role from the Delegations manual as this role no longer exists

Recommendation(s)

1. That the report 'Update to Financial Delegations - November 2022' by Anan Thiru, Accounting Assistant - Treasury and Projects and Simon Crabb, Finance Manager and dated 4 November 2022, be received.
2. That Ruben Wylie is ratified as an authorised signatory of council's bank accounts
3. That Taka Skipwith is ratified as an authorised signatory of council's bank accounts
4. That council's Delegation Manual is updated to reflect Attachment 1 pertaining to item 6.2 of the 22 November 2022 council agenda.

OptionsNo.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Approve updates to the financial delegations as recommended and presented in Attachment 1	Accurate and up to date documentation will enable the correct users to be setup and operate the councils banking facilities.	None
2	Do not approve the updates to the financial delegations as recommended and presented in Attachment 1	None	Reduced users with banking access will hinder the processing of payments and increase the risk of late payments in times of staff absences.

The staff's recommended option is Option 1.

Considerations

1. Significance and engagement

Section 76AA of the LGA directs that council must adopt a policy setting out how significance will be determined, and the level of engagement that will be triggered. This policy assists council in determining how to achieve compliance with the LGA requirements in relation to decisions.

This decision is considered to be of low significance when assessed against council's Significance and Engagement Policy because it is part of council's day to day activities. Council is able to make decisions relating to this matter without undertaking further consultation or engagement.

2. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance

The activities detailed in this report are in accordance with the council's Treasury Management Policy which was adopted in compliance with the decision-making requirements of sections 76–82 of the Local Government Act 2002.

Further considerations

Being a purely administrative matter Environmental Impact, Community Views, Māori Impact Statement, Financial Implications, and Implementation Issues are not applicable.

Background/Tuhinga

Council's delegation manual records delegations given to council officers in relation to administrative and financial matters, and in relation to statutory duties, responsibilities, and powers.

Updates to the financial delegations within the Delegations manual are proposed in response to council appointing a new Chief Executive Officer, a new GM of Environmental Services and a new Financial Accountant, and the role of Acting Management Accountant ceasing to exist.

An excerpt from the Delegation's manual, is provided in **Attachment 1** highlighting, in yellow, the changes proposed in this agenda item.

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: Proposed Update to the Councils Financial Delegations [↓](#) 

Current incumbents*:

Chief Executive	Jonathan Gibbard
Group Manager – Corporate Services	Bruce Howse
Group Manager – Governance and Engagement	Auriole Ruka
Group Manager –Environmental Services	Ruben Wylie
Finance Manager	Simon Crabb
Management Accountant	Casey Mitchell
Financial Accountant	Taka Skipwith
Assistant Management Accountant	Kim Harvey
Accounting Assistant – Treasury and Projects	Anan Thiru
Accounting Assistant	Shannon Wilson

**Note the above list of current incumbents isn't included in the Delegations manual but included in this attachment as additional information.*

Financial Delegations from the Council to Officers

Description	Delegated to
Overall responsibility for day-to-day treasury management activities Including establishing appropriate structures, procedures, and controls.	Group Manager – Corporate Services
Borrowing and investment Undertaking new borrowing or re-financing of existing debt in accordance with LTP / AP, requirements of the LGA 2002, approved policies, including investment, Liability Management and Treasury Management Policies, counterparties, approved expenditure limits and any relevant council resolutions.	Chief Executive
Investments – in accordance with Investment Policy, Treasury Management Policy, Statement of Investment Policy and Objectives (SIPO) and relevant sub-committee or working party Terms of Reference.	Group Manager – Corporate Services
Compliance with legislation Ensuring the financial policies included in Part 6 subpart 3 of LGA 2002 comply with existing and new legislation.	Group Manager – Corporate Services.
Bank accounts Opening/closing bank accounts and authorising signatories to be ratified by the council. Overseeing the Council's cash requirements.	Group Manager – Corporate Services Finance Manager Group Manager – Corporate Services Finance Manager Accounting Assistant – Treasury and Projects

Description	Delegated to
<p>Day to day treasury functions – Internally Managed Funds</p> <p>Maintaining a register of all balance sheet items and reconciliations, reviewing and approving all reconciliations and overseeing maintenance and integrity of general ledger recording.</p> <p>Maintaining a register of all daily cashflow requirements, bank, investment and reconciliations.</p>	<p>Group Manager - Corporate Services Finance Manager Financial Accountant Management Accountant</p> <p>Finance Manager Financial Accountant Accounting Assistant – Treasury and Projects</p>
<p>Bank authorities including operation of bank accounts</p> <p>All Accounts All Banks</p>	<p>Any two of the following positions: (signing and countersigning)</p> <p>Chief Executive Group Manager – Corporate Services Group Manager – Environmental Services Group Manager – Governance and Engagement Finance Manager Management Accountant Financial Accountant Acting Management Accountant</p>
<p>Issue and operation of council credit cards</p> <p>All banks</p>	<p>Any of the signatories in Schedule 4 “Approved credit card holders” are authorised to operate corporate credit cards subject to approved expenditure limits, LTP / AP budgets and any relevant council policy. The CEO approves the issuing and limits on all staff credit cards.</p> <p>The CEO approves all Group Manager credit card expenditure. Group Manager’s approve other staff credit card expenditure.</p> <p>The Chairperson approves the CEO expenditure, and the Deputy Chairperson approves the Chairperson’s expenditure.</p>
<p>Day to day functions – Externally Managed Funds</p> <p>Working Capital Short Term Fund</p> <p>Invest and withdraw funds within SIPO limits</p> <p>Initiator</p> <p>Authoriser</p>	<p>Accounting Assistant – Treasury and Projects Accounting Assistant Financial Accountant</p> <p>Chief Executive plus any one of the following positions (signing and countersigning):</p> <p>Group Manager – Corporate Services Finance Manager</p>

Description	Delegated to
<p>Long Term Fund</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Property Reinvestment Fund Infrastructure Investment Fund Community Investment Fund <p>Invest and withdraw funds between fund managers as approved by Council and/or Investment Sub-Committee within the SIPO limits.</p> <p>Initiator</p> <p>Authoriser</p>	<p>Management Accountant Financial Accountant</p> <p>Accounting Assistant – Treasury and Projects Financial Accountant</p> <p>Chief Executive Officer plus any one of the following positions (signing and countersigning):</p> <p>Group Manager – Corporate Services Finance Manager Management Accountant Financial Accountant*</p>
<p>Operation of the Electronic Banking ASB Fastnet System</p> <p>System used to download bank statement transactions.</p>	<p>Group Manager – Corporate Services Finance Manager Financial Accountant Management Accountant Accounting Assistant – Treasury and Projects Accounting Assistant Assistant Management Accountant Finance Support Officer (2-year fixed term from 14 June 2022) Acting Management Accountant</p>
<p>On-line Corporate Saver account.</p> <p>Transfer between Corporate Saver and Cheque Account – Initiator/Authoriser.</p>	<p>Group Manager – Corporate Services Finance Manager Financial Accountant Management Accountant Accounting Assistant – Treasury and Projects Accounting Assistant Assistant Management Accountant Acting Management Accountant</p>
<p>Direct Credit to Pay Creditors</p> <p>Initiator</p> <p>Authoriser (Must be a different person than initiator)</p>	<p>Financial Accountant Accounting Assistant Accounting Assistant – Treasury and Projects</p> <p>Any two of the following positions (signing and countersigning):</p>

Description	Delegated to
	<p>Group Manager – Corporate Services Group Manager – Governance and Engagement Group Manager – Environmental Services Finance Manager Financial Accountant Management Accountant Assistant Management Accountant Acting Management Accountant</p>
<p>Payroll Payments Initiator</p> <p>Authoriser (must be a different person than initiator)</p>	<p>Financial Accountant Accounting Assistant Accounting Assistant – Treasury and Projects</p> <p>Any two of the following positions (signing and countersigning):</p> <p>Group Manager – Corporate Services Finance Manager Financial Accountant Management Accountant Group Manager – Governance and Engagement. Group Manager – Environmental Services Assistant Management Accountant Acting Management Accountant</p>
<p>Write-off outstanding accounts receivable of amounts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> less than \$1,000 Between \$1,000 and \$5,000 Greater than \$5,000 	<p>Chief Executive, Group Manager and Managers Chief Executive and Group Managers Chief Executive (with the remission to be reported to the next council meeting)</p>
Refund of unused portion of Application Deposit.	<p>Group Manager – Regulatory Services Consents Manager Coastal and Works Consents Manager</p>
<p>Remit fees and charges of amounts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> less than \$1,000 Between \$1,000 and \$5,000 Greater than \$5,000 	<p>All Group Managers and Managers Chief Executive Council</p>
<p>Withholding of goods or services</p> <p>Consideration of the provision of services to the council, or tenancy or occupation of any council property or asset by any persons who have had a bad debt owing to the council written off, is subject to the Chief Executive Officers discretion.</p>	<p>Chief Executive</p>

* It is considered an acceptable one up approval process where the Financial Accountant approve files initiated/loaded by the Accounting Assistants.

TITLE:	Confirmation of governance structure, membership and councillor portfolios
From:	Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist and Auriole Ruka, Pou Manawhakahaere - GM Governance and Engagement
Authorised by Group Manager/s:	Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer and Auriole Ruka, Pou Manawhakahaere - GM Governance and Engagement, on 17 November 2022

Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga

This report presents the proposed governance structure for the 2022-2025 Triennium for council's formal consideration.

It concludes with the recommendations that the council approves the proposed governance structure and membership, including the delegations and terms of reference where relevant. Recommendations are also made for appointments to River Liaison Groups and councillor portfolios.

Recommendations

1. That the report 'Confirmation of governance structure, membership and councillor portfolios' by Chris Taylor, Governance Specialist and Auriole Ruka, Pou Manawhakahaere - GM Governance and Engagement and dated 4 November 2022, be received.
2. That Northland Regional Council establishes the following committees, subcommittees and working parties and approves the Terms of Reference for each (as detailed in Appendix One):
 - a. Regional Land Transport Committee¹
 - b. Investment and Property Subcommittee
 - c. Audit and Risk Subcommittee
 - d. Natural Resources Working Party
 - e. Biosecurity and Biodiversity Working Party
 - f. WDC/NRC Whangārei Public Transport Working Party
3. That the Northland Regional Council reaffirms the continuation of the Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party (TTMAC) - that was deemed by the previous council not to be discharged on the coming into office of the council elected at the October 2022 triennial elections - and its Terms of Reference (as detailed in **Appendix Seven**).²

¹ In accordance with section 105(1) of the Land Transport Management Act 2003.

² Note: The Civil Defence Emergency Management Group continues in perpetuity (in accordance with section 12(2) of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002); as does Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē Beach Board (in accordance with section 62(2)(b) of the Te Hiku Claims Settlement Bill). The Kaipara Harbour Remediation Committee, the Joint Regional Economic Development Committee and the Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee were not discharged at the end of the triennium (in accordance with their Terms of Reference adopted by all founding members).

4. That the Terms of Reference for joint committees and the Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party be reviewed by the respective joint committees and TTMAC at their first meeting. Any amendments agreed upon are to be brought back to respective councils for ratification.
5. That the council approves the membership of the subcommittees, joint committees and working parties, including the appointment of the Chairperson as ex-officio to all subcommittees and working parties, as set out in the body of this report and attachments.
6. That the Chairperson of each committee, subcommittee and working party report verbally to council monthly on their activities at the ordinary council meeting.
7. That the council appoints councillors to the following River Working Groups in the following roles:

Memberships / Delegation	Councillor
Kāeo-Whangaroa River Working Group	Cr M Robinson as Chair (Alternate Cr J Carr)
Kaihū River Working Group	Cr J Blackwell as Chair
Kerikeri River Working Group	Cr J Carr as Chair (Alternate Cr M Robinson)
Ruakākā River Working Group	Cr R Stolwerk as Chair
Taumārere River Working Group	Cr G Crawford and Community Member as Co-Chairs (Alternate Cr J Carr)
Urban Whangārei Working Group	Cr J Craw as Chair
Awanui River Working Group	Cr J Carr as Chair (Alternate Cr P Jones)

8. That the council confirms the following councillor portfolios:

Memberships / Delegation	Councillor
Appeals on Regional Plan	Cr A Macdonald
Kaipara Moana Working Party	Cr T Shortland and Cr P Jones
Northland Conservation Board	Cr G Crawford
Northland Sports Facilities Plan (Sport Northland)	TBA at such time Sport Northland has confirmed its governance arrangements.
Shareholder representative for Northland Marsden Maritime Holdings Ltd <i>(delegating all necessary authority to represent the council's interest including but not limited to exercising council's vote at Annual General Meetings and giving effect to council's shareholder resolutions).</i>	Cr T Shortland
Shareholder representative for Northland Inc Ltd <i>(Delegating all necessary authority to represent the council's interest including but not limited to exercising the council's vote at Annual General Meetings and giving effect to council's shareholder resolutions)</i>	Cr P Jones
Shareholder representative on Regional Software Holdings Ltd. <i>(Delegating all necessary authority to represent the council's interest including but not limited to exercising the council's vote at Annual General Meetings and giving effect to council's shareholder resolutions)</i>	Cr T Shortland
Upper North Island Strategic Alliance (UNISA)	Cr T Shortland
Zone one (LGNZ)	Cr T Shortland

9. That the appointments detailed in recommendations 7 and 8 above constitutes as the local authority's business. Hence appointed members can claim vehicle and travel time allowances.
10. That the governance structure established at this meeting be reviewed for effectiveness and possible improvements after ten months of operation.
11. That based on the allocation of responsibilities outlined in the body of this report and Attachment One "Proposed New Governance Structure for the 2022-2025 Triennium", that the pool for higher duties allowance of \$580,951 be fully allocated as follows:
 - a) That the Deputy Chair receives a higher duties allowance of \$10,000, bringing the Deputy Chair total salary to \$81,368.88.
 - b) That remaining councillors receive a higher duties allowance of \$17,658.88 each, bringing councillors total salary to \$71,368.88. This is based on the underpinning principle of council that additional duties will be apportioned in such a manner that there will be an equitable workload between councillors.
12. That the higher duties allocation set out above (supplemented by the appropriate supporting information), be provided to the Remuneration Authority-
13. That council appoints Councillor Simon Reid (principal) and Councillor Phil Halse (alternate) to represent the Whangarei District Council on the Regional Transport Committee³ (noting that Far North and Kaipara District councils representatives will be brought to council for formal endorsement on receipt of nomination).

Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Establish governance structure and appoint representatives as recommended	Retains "momentum" and allows ongoing workstreams to continue.	None apparent. With a review in ten months' time there is an opportunity to refine the structure if necessary.
2	Delay establishing governance structure and appointing representative	Provides more time for new council to consider governance structure and who to appoint.	Important workstreams may lose momentum and cause unnecessary delays.

The staff's recommended option is 1 - to establish a governance structure and appoint representatives.

Considerations

1. Significance and engagement

Given the administrative nature of the decisions being sought by this report, when assessed according to the council's Significance Policy is deemed to be of low significance.

2. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance

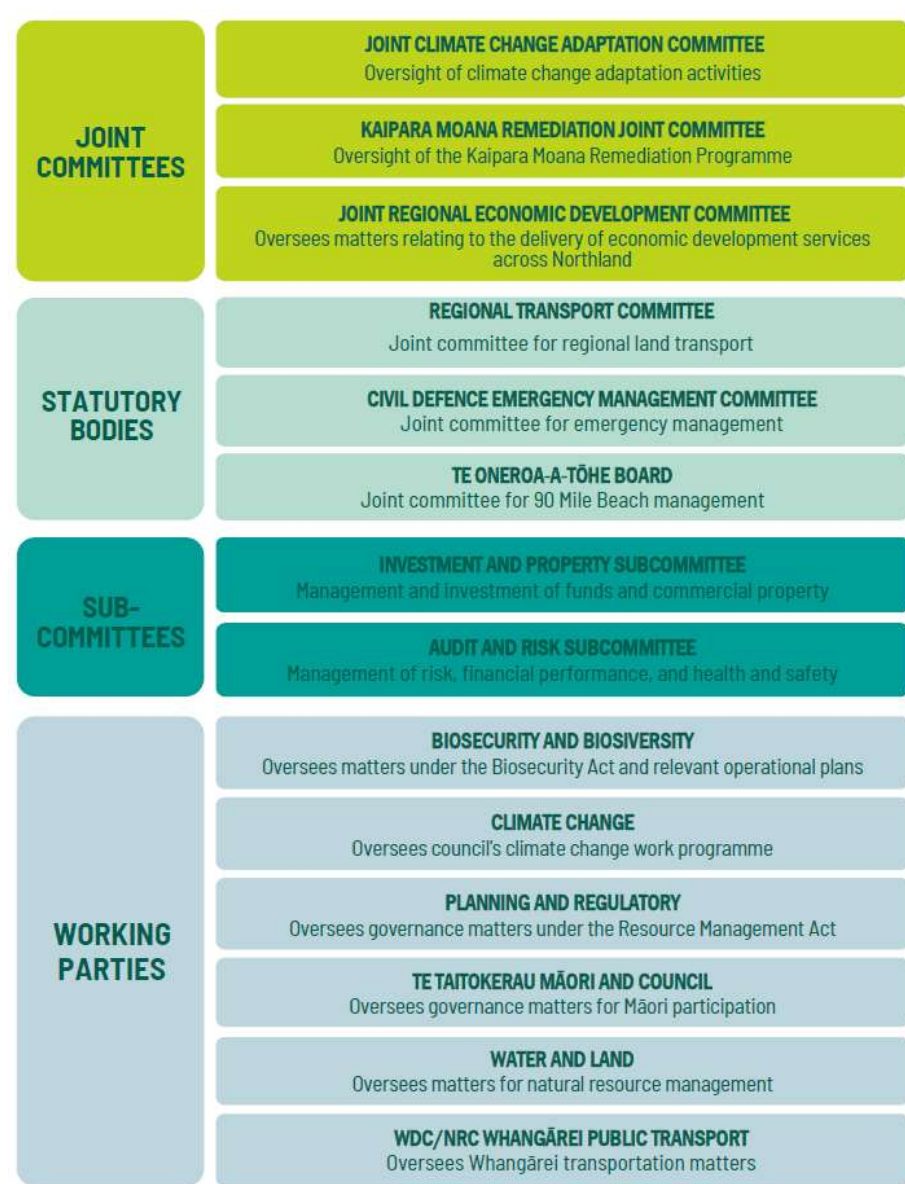
³ In accordance with section 105(2) of the Land Transport Management Act 2003.

The activities detailed in this report are in accordance with the council's decision making process and sections 76-82 of the Local Government Act 2002.

Council's governance structure provides the critical framework for council to deliver on its priorities and sets the foundation for robust discussion and decision making during the triennium which encompasses all the remaining considerations (Climate Impact, Environmental Impact, Community Views, Māori Impact Statement, Financial Implications and Implementation Implications are not applicable).

Background/Tuhinga

Following the election in October 2022 there have been several workshop discussions on options for council's governance structure for the next three years in office. Council now needs to resolve its preferred structure for the 2022-2025 Triennium. Analysis of possible opportunities for improvement on the previous governance structure resulted in the following proposed governance structure.



Memberships and functions

The following membership and functions are proposed for each committee, subcommittee and working party. Positions marked as “TBA” (to be appointed) indicate establishment of the position with the appointment yet to be confirmed. Refer to the attachments to this report for the full terms of reference for each statutory committee, joint committee, subcommittee and working party.

Except for the sub-committee delegations detailed below, all other decisions are made by the full council via a recommendation or series of recommendations from the relevant sub-committee, joint committee or working party. For reasons of efficiency and/or expediency, should a subcommittee or working party not be able to perform their functions, the council will assume their role and responsibilities.

Statutory Committees

Te Oneroa-a-Tōhē-Board – Joint committee

Members: Crs J Carr and P Jones

- Oversee the implementation of the Beach Management Plan for Te-Oneroa-a-Tōhē (Ninety Mile Beach).
- To provide governance and direction to all those who have a role in, or responsibility for, the Te Oneroa-a-Tohe management area, in order to protect and enhance environmental, economic, social, cultural, and spiritual well-being within that area for the benefit of present and future generations.

Civil Defence Emergency Management Committee

Member: Cr J Craw

Alternate: Cr R Stolwerk

- Co-ordinate planning, programmes, and activities related to civil defence emergency management across the areas of reduction, readiness, response, and recovery;
- Encourage co-operation and joint action within the Northland region.

Regional Transport Committee

Chair: Cr J Carr

Deputy Chair: Cr J Blackwell

Alternate: Cr P Jones

- Prepare Regional Land Transport Plan for council approval;
- Liaise with appropriate road safety bodies and advise council on new initiatives;
- Administer Total Mobility Scheme and report to council as appropriate; and
- Prepare a Regional Public Transport Plan for council approval.
- Recommend the required independent appointments for this committee.

Joint Committees

Joint Climate Change Committee

The Joint Climate Change Adaptation Committee is a standing committee made up of elected members from all the Northland councils and representatives from Northland hapū and iwi.

Member: Cr A Macdonald

Alternate: Cr J Crow

NRC iwi/hapū representative: TBA (*previously Rihari Dargaville and Alternate Thomas Hohaia*)

- Provide direction and oversight of the development and implementation of climate change adaptation activities by local government in Te Taitokerau
- Receive advice and provide direction and support to Climate Adaptation Te Taitokerau
- Make recommendations to member councils to ensure a consistent regional approach is adopted to climate change adaptation activities

Kaipara Moana Remediation Joint Committee

The Kaipara Moana Remediation Joint Committee consists of 6 appointed Kaipara Uri entities, three elected members appointed by Auckland Council and three elected members appointed by NRC.

Members: Crs J Blackwell, J Crow, A Macdonald

- Provide stewardship and governance over the expenditure of the Crown Grant and council funding, as well as contributions from land-owners
- Commissioning and approving remediation budgets and work-plans for the Kaipara Moana Remediation programme

Joint Regional Economic Development Committee

Members: Crs P Jones, M Robinson

District Council Representation: Two members from the Far North District Council and two members from the Kaipara District Council.

Make the decisions necessary as shareholders of Northland Inc (including the appointment of directors and the development of the Statement of Intent)

- Make funding allocations from the Investment and Growth Reserve (including operational funding of Northland Inc).
- Receive advice and provide direction and support to economic development in Northland and makes recommendations to member councils to ensure a consistent regional approach.

Subcommittees

Investment and Property subcommittee

Chair: Cr R Stolwerk

Members: Crs J Blackwell, J Crow, G Crawford, P Jones (*Chair of A & R Subcommittee*)

Independents: J Erickson (Independent Consultant) and S Henderson (*Independent Financial Advisor*) and TBA (*Independent Risk Advisor*)

Māori Representation: Two (2) Independent Tangata Whenua Members (TBA)

Ex officio: Chair T Shortland

- Authority to move investment funds between managed funds within SIPO limits.
- CEO delegation to withdraw and invest short term fund within established delegations.
- Identify manager of new funds for approval by the full council.
- No withdrawal of new funds except from the short term fund

- Authority to authorise CEO to negotiate sale and purchase agreements for property within +/-5% of valuation.

Audit and Risk Subcommittee

Chair: Cr P Jones

Members: Crs A Macdonald, Cr J Carr, Cr M Robinson, Cr R Stolwerk (*Chair of I & P Subcommittee*)

Independents: S Henderson (*Independent Financial Advisor*) and TBA (*Independent Risk Advisor*)

Māori Representation: Two (2) Independent Tangata Whenua Members (TBA).

Ex officio: Chair T Shortland

- Make recommendation to council on risk management and health and safety matters
- Monitor and review financial policies and financial performance.
- Recommend new borrowing to council
- Review corporate risk register and risk management plans

Working parties

Natural Resources Working Party

Chair: Cr A Macdonald

Members: Crs J Carr, G Crawford, M Robinson

Māori Representation: Four members of Te Taitokerau Māori and Council (TTMAC) Working Party (TBA).

Ex officio: Cr T Shortland

- Provide oversight on activities that contribute to or influence the quality & quantity of water including land management and environmental monitoring.
- Provide oversight on council's resource management planning and regulatory activities.
- Oversee the implementation of the Proposed Regional Plan.
- Be the governance entity for the policy implementation of Essential Freshwater.
- Make recommendations to council on appeals and recommendations to accept, adopt or reject private plan change applications.

Te Taitokerau Māori and Council (TTMAC) Working Party

Co-chairs: Cr M Robinson and 1 x member of TTMAC

Members: All of Northland Regional Council councillors

Māori Representation: 21 Māori representatives

- Monitor and advise on council's compliance with its legislative obligations to Māori including under the Local Government Act 2002 and the Resource Management Act 1991.
- Provide advice to council on topics referred to it by council.
- Develop pathways (and processes) that will achieve lasting and meaningful relationships between Māori and council.
- Ensure the views of Māori are taken into account in the exercise of council functions.

Biosecurity and Biodiversity Working Party

Chair: Cr G Crawford

Members: Crs J Blackwell, J Craw, M Robinson

Māori Representation: Four members of Te Taitokerau Māori and Council (TTMAC) Working Party (TBA).

Ex officio: Cr T Shortland

- Provide oversight on council's biosecurity and biodiversity activities.
- Oversee the implementation of the Regional Pest Management Plan (RPMP), Marine Pathway Plan (MPP) & regularly report progress to council.

WDC/NRC Whangārei Public Transport Working Party

NRC Members: Crs J Carr (*Chair of RTC*), J Craw, R Stolwerk


WDC Members 3 x WDC Crs (TBA)

- Provide oversight on Whangārei public transport issues with the intention of increasing patronage.
- Oversee the integration of city and district planning in relation to public transport issues.

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: Proposed TOR Regional Transport Committee [↓](#) 

Attachment 2: Proposed TOR Investment and Property Subcommittee [↓](#) 

Attachment 3: Proposed TOR Audit and Risk Subcommittee [↓](#) 

Attachment 4: Proposed TOR Natural Resources Working Party [↓](#) 

Attachment 5: Proposed TOR Biosecurity and Biodiversity Working Party [↓](#) 

Attachment 6: Proposed TOR Whangareia Public Transport Working Party [↓](#) 

Attachment 7: TOR Te Taitokerau Maori and Council Working Party [↓](#) 

Terms of Reference

Regional Transport Committee

Membership

The Regional Transport Committee (the committee) comprises two (2) councillors (as Chairperson and Deputy Chairperson) plus a representative from each of the district councils and a representative from the New Zealand Transport Agency, as follows:

Northland Regional Council members

Chairperson: Cr J Carr
Deputy Chairperson: Cr J Blackwell

TLA Members

Member representing the Far North District Council	TBA
Member representing the Whāngārei District Council	Cr Simon Reid
Member representing the Kaipara District Council	TBA
Representative of the NZ Transport Agency	Steve Mutton, Director Regional Relationships (Upper North Island)

Any appointing authority may appoint an alternate (who shall have full voting rights) for the appointed member. These alternative members as follows:

Northland Regional Council	Cr P Jones
Far North District Council	TBA
Whangārei District Council	Cr P Halse
Kaipara District Council	TBA
New Zealand Transport Agency	Jacqui Hori-Hoult, Manager – System Management

Quorum

The quorum for meetings of the committee shall be three members, being half of the members (including vacancies).

Terms of membership

Should any member appointed to represent an outside organisation be absent without prior leave from two consecutive meetings of the committee, that person's appointment is automatically terminated.

Should a vacancy occur in the membership of the committee, the Committee Secretary (or person fulfilling that role) shall report this to the next meeting of the council and the nominating organisation will be invited to nominate a replacement.

Members of the committee representing outside organisations are expected to regularly report back to their nominating organisation on matters discussed at committee meetings.

ID: [DMHUB-33537858-1065](#)

Voting Rights

At any meeting of the committee, the Chair, or any other person presiding at the meeting, has a deliberate vote, and in the case of an equality of votes, does not have a casting vote (and therefore the act or question is defeated and the status quo is preserved). This is a requirement of the Land Transport Management Act 2003 (the Act) and therefore takes precedence over council's standing orders.

Functions

- 1) To prepare for approval by the Northland Regional Council:
 - a) a Regional Land Transport Plan for the Northland region, or any variations to the plan or any reports on the plan prepared under the Act;
 - b) a Regional Public Transport Plan, or any variations to the plan prepared under the Act; and
 - c) to provide the regional council with any advice and assistance the regional council may request in relation to its transport responsibilities.
- 2) To adopt a policy that determines significance in respect of variations made to the Regional Land Transport Plan.
- 3) To regularly monitor and review progress towards the adoption and implementation of the Regional Land Transport Plan.
- 4) To approve procedures and requirements for implementing the council's public passenger transport service registration functions under the Act.
- 5) To advise the council on any significant legislative changes, programmes, plans or reports relating to the region's land transport system.
- 6) To liaise with Ministry of Transport, New Zealand Transport Agency, the Commissioner of Police, district councils, Northland's Road Safety Forum and other interests on land transport matters, and advise the council on appropriate new initiatives.
- 7) To regularly monitor and review progress towards the performance targets and outcomes relative to land transport contained in the current Long Term Plan and Annual Plan.

Delegated Authority – Power to Act

- 1) Does not have the powers of council to act in the following instances as specified by Clause 32 (1) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002:
 - a) make a rate;
 - b) make a bylaw;
 - c) borrow money, or purchase or dispose of assets, other than that in accordance with the current Long Term Plan or Annual Plan;
 - d) adopt a Long Term Plan, or Annual Plan, or Annual Report;
 - e) appoint a Chief Executive; or
 - f) adopt policies required to be adopted and consulted on under this Act in association with a Long Term Plan or developed for the purpose of the Local Governance Statement.
- 2) Does have the ability to appoint subcommittees to deal with any matters of responsibility within the committee's Terms of Reference and areas of responsibility,

ID: [DMHUB-33537858-1065](#)

and to make recommendations to the committee on such matters. (Any subcommittee shall not have power to act other than by a resolution of the committee with specific limitations where there is urgency or special circumstance.)

- 3) Does have the ability to make decisions in accordance with the Terms of Reference.

Power to Act (for the information of council)

- 1) To prepare an annual report on the Regional Land Transport Plan-
- 2) To co-ordinate regional road safety activities.
- 3) To monitor transport activities of the regional council, territorial authorities and New Zealand Transport Agency in order to report on progress of the Regional Land Transport Plan.

Power to recommend to council

- 1) To prepare and recommend the Regional Land Transport Plan and Regional Public Transport Plan. To consider and recommend transportation planning studies and associated outcomes.
- 2) To provide recommendations to relevant government agencies on transport priorities and the allocation of national regional transport funds.

ID: [DMHUB-33537858-1065](#)

Terms of Reference

Investment and Property Subcommittee

Membership

The Investment and Property Subcommittee shall be comprised of five (5) councillors, two (2) Independent Tangata Whenua members, two (2) Independent Advisors and one (1) Independent Consultant member as follows:

Chair:	Cr R Stolwerk
Members:	Cr J Blackwell Cr J Crow Cr G Crawford Cr P Jones
Māori representation:	Two (2) tāngata whenua members, TBA (voting rights)
Ex officio:	Chair Tui Shortland (voting rights)
Independent Consultant:	J Eriksen (non-voting) Will provide independent financial advice to the Investment and Property Subcommittee.
Independent Advisors	S Henderson (Independent Financial Advisor) and TBA (Independent Risk Advisor) (both non-voting)

Standing orders apply.

Quorum

The quorum for meetings of the subcommittee shall be five. Ex-officio and independent members count towards a quorum.

Vision, mission and areas of focus (Long Term Plan 2021-2031)

Our Northland – together we thrive. Working together to create a healthy environment, strong economy and resilient communities.

This subcommittee will contribute directly to the following areas of focus:

- A strong and sustainable regional economy

Objectives

The objectives of the subcommittee are to:

- Provide oversight and assistance to the Chief Executive on council's investment activities within established limits, ensuring external accountabilities and responsibilities are fulfilled;
- Provide oversight and assistance to the council's Chief Executive to negotiate property sale and purchase agreements;
- Make recommendations to council on investment fund matters;
- Make recommendations to council on property investment matters; and
- Manage investment returns that can influence operational budgets and public equity.

Role and Responsibilities

The subcommittee is directly responsible and accountable to the council for the exercise of its responsibilities. In carrying out its responsibilities, the subcommittee must at all times recognise that primary responsibility for management of the council rests with the Chief Executive.

For reasons of efficiency and/or expediency, should the subcommittee not be able to perform their functions, the council will assume their role and responsibilities.

Working Groups

The subcommittee is further authorised to fulfil its role and responsibilities through the establishment or disestablishment of other working groups as the subcommittee sees fit. Working groups can include councillors, independent members, and advisors whose skills and experience are appropriate to the work being done. The staff member responsible to provide support to the working groups shall be the Chief Executive, who may delegate the role.

DELEGATED AUTHORITY AND FUNCTIONS

The council authorises the subcommittee, within the scope of its Terms of Reference, role and responsibilities, to:

1. General

- a. Make decisions in accordance with the Terms of Reference
- b. Move investment funds between various managed funds within approved limits provided for in the Statement of Investment Policy and Objectives (SIPO).
- c. CEO to withdraw and invest in the Short Term Fund within established delegations.
- d. CEO to withdraw and invest funds held in term deposits being self-managed cash reserves.
- e. Recommend manager(s) of new funds for approval by council.
- f. Ensure that there are no withdrawals from funds except the Short Term Fund without the approval of council.
- g. Subject to operating within approved budget allocation - obtain information it needs from the CEO and/or external party (subject to their legal obligation to protect information);
- h. Discuss any matters with the external auditor, or other external parties (subject to confidentiality considerations);
- i. Request the attendance of any employee, subject to the Chief Executive's approval, at meetings of the subcommittee or its working groups;
- j. Subject to operating within approved budget allocation - obtain external legal or other professional advice, as considered necessary to meet its responsibilities, at the council's expense;
- k. Co-opt a person as a (non-voting) member of the subcommittee to assist with special projects;

- l. Recommend to council that additional members be appointed to the subcommittee should it consider wider representation would be of assistance in performing its functions;
- m. Appoint working groups to make recommendations to the subcommittee on any matters of responsibility within the subcommittee's Terms of Reference, and act in accordance with resolutions of the subcommittee (in line with specific limitations) where there is urgency or special circumstance;
- n. To regularly report progress on its functions to the council; and
- o. Undertake such other functions as may be delegated by council from time to time.

2. Financial Management and Reporting

In relation to the purpose of this subcommittee:

- a. Monitor and report on the financial performance of all funds against budget.
- b. Make recommendations to council on any forecast variances against budget.
- c. Determine the means of financial reporting to council and the public.

3. Funding, Financial and Other Policies

In relation to the purpose of this subcommittee:

- a. Contribute to the review of any changes required to relevant sections of the council's funding and financial policies (including those required under Section 102 of the Local Government Act (LGA) 2002) specifically the:
 - i. Revenue and Financing Policy; and
 - ii. Investment Policy

4. Investment Functions

In relation to the purpose of this subcommittee:

- a. To periodically review council's overall investment portfolio and provide recommendations to council as to adjustments to maintain an appropriate investment mix.
- b. Ensure there are no withdrawals from the Long Term Fund without the approval of council, other than for operational funding from gains made in the fund and as budgeted in accordance with the current Long Term Plan or Annual Plan.
- c. Undertake the investment functions referred to in the Investment Policy adopted within the current LTP. These functions include:
 - i. To review performance and compliance against council's Investment Policy and reporting for all the council's investment funds (Statement of Investment Policy and Objectives).
 - ii. To make investment decisions within the subcommittee's delegations;
 - iii. To make recommendations to council on any changes that fall outside the subcommittee's delegations including changes to the construction of investment portfolios, the Investment Fund Statement of Investment Policies and Objectives, the Investment Policy, and investment management appointees.

- iv. To recommend to the council targets, policies and strategies for undertaking its investment activities.
- v. To oversee the administration and review of the council's investment opportunities within the subcommittees delegated authority and make recommendations to council as appropriate.

5. Property Investment Functions

The subcommittee's responsibilities are to:

- a. To work with the CEO to negotiate sale and purchase agreements for properties (within +/- 5% of their valuation) and provide appropriate sale and purchase recommendations to council for consideration.
- b. Undertake the property investment functions referred to in the Treasury Management Policy adopted within the current LTP. These functions include:
 - i) To review performance and compliance against council's Treasury Management Policy (and its objectives);
 - ii) To make recommendations to council on any changes to the subcommittee's delegations, the objectives and policies in the Treasury Management Policy;
 - iii) To recommend to the council targets, policies and strategies for undertaking its property activities.
 - iv) To oversee the administration and review of the council's property investment opportunities within the subcommittees delegated authority and make recommendations to council as appropriate.

6. No Delegated Authority – Power to Act

In Accordance Clause 32 (1) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002, the subcommittee does not have the powers of council to borrow money or purchase or dispose of assets.

Terms of Reference

Audit and Risk Subcommittee

Membership

The Audit and Risk Subcommittee shall be comprised of five (5) councillors, two (2) Independent Tangata Whenua Members (voting rights) and two (2) Independent Advisors (voting rights) as follows:

Chair:	Cr P Jones
Members:	Cr A Macdonald Cr J Carr Cr M Robinson Cr R Stolwerk
Māori representation:	Two (2) Independent Tangata Whenua Members (voting rights) TBA
Ex officio:	Chair T Shortland (voting rights)
Independent Advisors:	Stuart Henderson (Independent Financial Advisor - voting rights) and TBA (Independent Risk Advisor - voting rights)

Standing orders apply.

Quorum

The quorum for meetings of the sub-committee shall be five. Ex-officio and independent members count towards a quorum.

Vision, mission and areas of focus (Long Term Plan 2021-2031)

Our Northland – together we thrive. Working together to create a healthy environment, strong economy and resilient communities.

Objectives

The objectives of the subcommittee are to:

- Provide oversight and assistance to the Chief Executive on council's internal and external audit activities, ensuring that accountabilities and responsibilities are fulfilled;
- Make recommendations to council on audit matters; and
- Review financial performance.
- Provide oversight and assistance to the council's risk and health & safety activities, ensuring that accountabilities and responsibilities are fulfilled; and
- Make recommendations to council on risk management and health and safety matters.

Responsibilities

The subcommittee is directly responsible and accountable to the council for the exercise of its responsibilities. The Chairperson, supported by staff, will provide a brief verbal report of subcommittee activities to each council meeting.

In carrying out its responsibilities, the subcommittee must at all times recognise that primary responsibility for management of the council rests with the Chief Executive.

For reasons of efficiency and/or expediency, should the subcommittee not be able to perform their functions, the council will assume their role and responsibilities.

ROLE AND FUNCTIONS

The council authorises the subcommittee, within the scope of its Terms of Reference, role and responsibilities, to:

1. General

- a) Subject to operating within approved budget allocation - obtain information it needs from the CEO and/or external party (subject to their legal obligation to protect information);
- b) Discuss any matters with the external auditor, or other external parties (subject to confidentiality considerations);
- c) Request the attendance of any employee, subject to the Chief Executive's approval, at meetings of the subcommittee or its working groups;
- d) In discussion with the CEO and subject to operating within approved budget allocation – request the CEO to obtain external legal or other professional advice, as considered necessary to meet its responsibilities, at the council's expense;
- e) Recommend the co-opting of a person as a (non-voting) member of the subcommittee to assist with special projects;
- f) To review council finances on a quarterly basis;
- g) Recommend to council that additional members be appointed to the sub-committee should it consider wider representation would be of assistance in performing its functions;
- h) To regularly report progress on its functions to the council; and
- i) Undertake such other functions as may be delegated by council from time to time.

2. External Audit

The subcommittee responsibilities are to:

- a) Act as a forum for communication between the Chief Executive, senior management, and internal and external auditors;
- b) Provide advice to the Chief Executive to negotiate fees with external auditors;
- c) Review Audit Management Letter;
- d) Review Audit Plan;
- e) Review Independent Audit Reports;
- f) Provide input and feedback on the financial statements and the audit coverage proposed by the external auditor, and provide feedback on the audit services provided;
- g) Review all external plans and reports for planned or completed audits and monitor management's implementation of audit recommendations;

- h) Oversee the co-ordination of audit programmes conducted by the external auditors and other review functions; and
- i) Provide reports and advice to the council on action taken on significant issues raised in relevant external audit reports and good practice guides.

3. Finance

The subcommittee responsibilities are to:

- a) Monitor and review financial policies;
- b) Monitor and review financial performance; and
- c) Recommend new borrowing to council.

4. Reporting

The subcommittee responsibilities are to:

- a) Review and recommend to council the adoption of the Annual Report and Summary Annual Report, focusing particularly on:
 - i. Any changes in accounting policies and practices;
 - ii. Major judgemental areas;
 - iii. Significant adjustments resulting from audit;
 - iv. Compliance with financial reporting and other applicable standards;
 - v. Compliance with statutory requirements; and
 - vi. Other reports prepared by management for release to stakeholders, such as any summary financial reports.

5. Risk Management

The subcommittee are to:

- a) Determine whether management has appropriately considered legal, operational and compliance risks as part of council's risk management arrangements;
- b) Review council's risk management framework and policies for effective identification and management of the council's risks.
- c) Review the council's corporate risk register in line with the council's risk management framework and policies.
- d) Review whether a sound and effective approach has been followed in developing strategic risk management plans for major projects or undertakings.
- e) Review the effect of the council's risk management framework on its control environment and insurance arrangements.
- f) Review whether a sound and effective approach has been followed in establishing council's business continuity planning arrangements, including whether disaster recovery plans have been tested periodically.
- g) Review council's fraud control plan and satisfy itself that the council has appropriate processes and systems in place to capture and effectively investigate fraud-related information.

- h) Review and monitor the council's policies and practices relating to sensitive expenditure.
- i) Review the effectiveness of the system for monitoring council's compliance with relevant laws, regulations and associated policies and make recommendations to council on improvements to council's risk management framework.

6. Health and Safety

The subcommittee responsibilities are to:

- a) Consider and review the council's health and safety management system, including receiving reports from management on the system and organisational wellness.
- b) Make recommendations to council on improvements to the Health and Safety Management System.

7. No Delegated Authority – Power to Act

In Accordance Clause 32 (1) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002, the subcommittee does not have the powers of council to borrow money or purchase or dispose of assets.

Terms of Reference

Natural Resources Working Party

Membership

The Natural Resource Working Party shall be comprised of four (4) councillors and four (4) Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party (TTMAC) members as follows:

Chair:	Cr A Macdonald
Members:	Cr. J. Carr Cr. G. Crawford Cr. M. Robinson
Māori representation:	Four (4) members of Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party (TTMAC), TBA
Ex officio:	Chair T Shortland

Standing orders do not apply.

Quorum

The quorum for meetings of the working party shall be four (4). Ex-officio and TTMAC members count towards a quorum.

Vision, mission and areas of focus (Long Term Plan 2021-2031)

Our Northland – together we thrive. Working together to create a healthy environment, strong economy and resilient communities.

This working party will contribute directly to the following areas of focus:

- Healthy waters for the environment and our people
- Resilient, adaptable communities in a changing climate
- Protected and flourishing native life
- Meaningful partnerships with tangata whenua

Objectives

The objectives of the working party are to:

1. Provide oversight and assistance to the Chief Executive on council's natural resources' strategic activities ensuring accountabilities and responsibilities are fulfilled; and
2. Make recommendations to council on natural resources matters.

Responsibilities

The working party is directly responsible and accountable to the council for the exercise of its responsibilities.

In carrying out its responsibilities, the working party must at all times recognise that primary responsibility for management of the council rests with the CEO.

ID: [DMHUB-33537858-1068](#)

For reasons of efficiency and/or expediency, should the working party not be able to perform its functions, the council will assume its role and responsibilities.

ROLE AND FUNCTIONS

The council authorises the working party, within the scope of its Terms of Reference, role and responsibilities, to:

1. General

- a) Subject to operating within approved budget allocation - obtain information it needs from the CEO and/or external party (subject to their legal obligation to protect information);
- b) Discuss any matters with the external auditor, or other external parties (subject to confidentiality considerations);
- c) Request the attendance of any employee, subject to the CEO's approval, at meetings of the working party or its working groups;
- d) In discussion with the CEO and subject to operating within approved budget allocation - obtain external legal or other professional advice, as considered necessary to meet its responsibilities, at the council's expense;
- e) Co-opt a person as a (non-voting) member of the working party to assist with special projects;
- f) Recommend to council that additional members be appointed to the working party should it consider wider representation would be of assistance in performing its functions;
- g) Undertake such other functions as may be delegated by council from time to time.

2. Planning & Regulatory

For council's planning and regulatory activities:

- a) To monitor and review the implementation of the Regional Policy Statement, the Proposed Regional Plan for Northland and Resource Management Act regulations.
- b) To oversee the development and implementation of regulatory strategies.
- c) To make recommendations to council on any appeals in accordance with council decisions on the proposed plan, plan change or variation.
- d) To recommend to council positions and perspectives on proposed legislation (including amendments) and national policy initiatives for incorporation into council submissions as appropriate.
- e) To oversee and monitor the delivery of council's consent and compliance functions.

3. Water and land Management

For council's water and land management activities:

- a) Monitor and review council's implementation of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020.
- b) Advise and make recommendations to council (and relevant working parties or working groups) on operational strategies related to freshwater or land management.
- c) Monitor and review progress towards council's objectives, the achievement of the performance targets and the delivery of work programmes in the relevant Long-

ID: [DMHUB-33537858-1068](#)

Term Plan, Annual Plan and operational strategies associated with council's natural resource management activities

- d) To monitor and review implementation of Nga Taumata o te Moana – our climate change strategy, as the actions relate to council's natural resource functions.

4. Reporting

The Chairperson, supported by staff, will report on working party activities and associated recommendations to Council on a quarterly basis.

5. Meeting Frequency

The Natural Resources Working Party is to meet quarterly.

6. No Delegated Authority – Power to Act

The working party has no delegated authority or power to act.

ID: [DMHUB-33537858-1068](#)

ID: [DMHUB-33537858-1068](#)

Terms of Reference

Biosecurity and Biodiversity Working Party

Membership

The Biosecurity and Biodiversity Working Party shall be comprised of four (4) councillors and four (4) Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party (TTMAC) members as follows:

Chair:	Cr G Crawford
Members:	Cr J Blackwell Cr J Crow Cr M Robinson
Māori representation:	Four (4) members of Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party (TTMAC), TBA
Ex officio:	Chair T Shortland

Standing orders do not apply.

Quorum

The quorum for meetings of the working party shall be four members. Ex-officio and non-elected members count towards a quorum.

Vision, mission and areas of focus (Long Term Plan 2021-2031)

Our Northland – together we thrive. Working together to create a healthy environment, strong economy and resilient communities.

This working party will contribute directly to the following areas of focus:

- Protected and flourishing native life
- Meaningful partnerships with tangata whenua

Objectives

The objectives of the working party are to:

- Provide oversight and assistance to the Chief Executive on council's biosecurity and biodiversity strategic activities ensuring accountabilities and responsibilities are fulfilled; and
- Make recommendations to council on biosecurity and biodiversity matters.

Responsibilities

The working party is directly responsible and accountable to the council for the exercise of its responsibilities.

In carrying out its responsibilities, the working party must at all times recognise that primary responsibility for management of the council rests with the Chief Executive.

For reasons of efficiency and/or expediency, should the working party not be able to perform their functions, the council will assume their role and responsibilities.

ROLE AND FUNCTIONS

The council authorises the working party, within the scope of its Terms of Reference, role and responsibilities, to:

1. General

- a) Subject to operating within approved budget allocation - obtain information it needs from the CEO and/or external party (subject to their legal obligation to protect information);
- b) Discuss any matters with the external auditor, or other external parties (subject) to confidentiality considerations;
- c) Request the attendance of any employee, subject to the Chief Executive's approval, at meetings of the working party or its working groups;
- d) In discussion with the CEO and subject to operating within approved budget allocation - obtain external legal or other professional advice, as considered necessary to meet its responsibilities, at the council's expense;
- e) Co-opt a person as a (non-voting) member of the working party to assist with special projects.
- f) Recommend to council that additional members be appointed to the working party should it consider wider representation would be of assistance in performing its functions;
- g) To regularly report progress on its functions to the council; and
- h) Undertake such other functions as may be delegated by council from time to time.

2. Biosecurity and Biodiversity

- a) For council's biosecurity and biodiversity activities:
 - i) Advise council on any significant legislative changes, programmes, plans or reports affecting these activities.
 - ii) Advise and make recommendations to council (and relevant working parties or working groups) on matters of policy and strategic nature.
 - iii) Monitor and review progress towards council's objectives, the achievement of the performance targets and the delivery of work programmes in the relevant Northland Long Term Plan, Annual Plan and operational strategies, such as the Regional Pest Management Plan (RPMP) and Marine Pathway Plan (MPP).
- b) To monitor and review implementation of Nga Taumata o te Moana – our climate change strategy, as the actions relate to council's biosecurity and biodiversity functions.
- c) To coordinate with other agencies on strategic matters concerning biosecurity and biodiversity in Northland.
- d) To identify and workshop important and/or contentious matters with full council, as appropriate, to ensure buy-in prior to formal council consideration of plans.
- e) To review and recommend to council on such other functions as may be delegated from time to time.

3. Reporting

The Chairperson, supported by staff, will report on working party activities and associated recommendations to Council on a quarterly basis.

4. Meeting Frequency

The Biosecurity and Biodiversity Working Party is to meet quarterly.

5. No Delegated Authority – Power to Act

The working party has no delegated authority or power to act.

Terms of Reference

NRC/WDC Whangārei Public Transport Working Party

Membership

The NRC/WDC Whangārei Public Transport Working Party shall be comprised of three (3) Northland Regional council members and three (3) Whangārei District Council members as follows:

Chair:	TBA
Members:	Cr J Carr
	Cr J Craw
	Cr R Stolwerk
WDC member 1	TBA
WDC member 1	TBA
WDC member 1	TBA

The number of members from WDC and NRC are to be the same.

Standing orders do not apply.

Quorum

The quorum for meetings of the working party shall be three (3). All members count towards a quorum.

Vision, mission and areas of focus (Long Term Plan 2021-2031)

Our Northland – together we thrive. Working together to create a healthy environment, strong economy and resilient communities.

The working party will contribute directly to the following areas of focus:

- Safe and effective transport networks connecting our region
- A strong and sustainable regional economy

Objectives

The objectives of the working party are to:

- To examine and discuss Whangārei public transport issues with the intention of increasing patronage across all modes of public transport; and advise and make recommendations to both councils accordingly.

Responsibilities

- The working party is directly responsible and accountable to their respective councils for the exercise of its responsibilities. The Chairperson, supported by staff, will provide a brief written report of working party activities to each council meeting.
- In carrying out its responsibilities, the working party must at all times recognise that primary responsibility for management of the councils rests with the Chief Executives.

ID: [DMHUB-33537858-1067](#)

- For reasons of efficiency and/or expediency, should the working party not be able to perform its functions, the councils will assume its role and responsibilities.

ROLE AND FUNCTIONS

The council authorises the working party, within the scope of its Terms of Reference, role and responsibilities, to:

1. General

- a) Subject to operating within approved budget allocation - obtain information it needs from the CEO and/or external party (subject to their legal obligation to protect information);
- b) Discuss any matters with the external auditor, or other external parties (subject to confidentiality considerations);
- c) Request the attendance of any employee, subject to the Chief Executive's approval, at meetings of the working party or its working groups;
- d) In discussion with the CEO and subject to operating within approved budget allocation - obtain external legal or other professional advice, as considered necessary to meet its responsibilities, at the council's expense;
- e) Co-opt a person as a (non-voting) member of the working party to assist with special projects;
- f) Recommend to council that additional members be appointed to the working party should it consider wider representation would be of assistance in performing its functions;
- g) Undertake such other functions as may be delegated by council from time to time.

2. Whangārei Public Transport

Issues to be considered include, but are not limited to;

- a) Bus route terminus location and infrastructure,
- b) Bus stops/shelters and signage,
- c) Potential new routes, services and trials,
- d) Park and ride options,
- e) Integration with city and district planning.

3. No Delegated Authority – Power to Act

The working party has no delegated authority or power to act.

ID: [DMHUB-33537858-1067](#)



Te Tira o te Taitokerau Māori me te Kaunihera ā rohe o Te Taitokerau

Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party
Ngā Kupu Pānga | Terms of Reference 2019-2022 Triennium

Date: April 2020

Author: Kaiwhakahaere Hononga Māori | Māori Relationships Manager

Kohikohinga | Contents

1. Kupu whakataki Background.....	3
2. Ngā roopū The Parties.....	3
Tāngata Whenua of Te Taitokerau.....	3
The statement of intent in regard to these for tāngata whenua are :	3
Northland Regional Council	3
3. Te Kaupapa Mission Statement.....	3
4. He Tirohanga Māori Vision Statement 2030	4
5. Ngā Ture Values	4
The following engagement principles will guide the committee in the pursuit of its purpose:.	4
6. Ngā whaingā Objectives	4
To advance Māori engagement that supports environmental, social, cultural and economic priorities across the region:	4
7. Ngā mema Membership.....	5
The working party will comprise up to 30 members in total consisting of:	5
8. Removal and replacement of members.....	6
9. Ngā Heamana Co-Chair's.....	7
10. Te wahanga Term of appointment.....	7
11. Whakamahinga Operation	7
12. Arataki tangata Member induction.....	7
13. Papā o te pānga Conflict of interest.....	8
14. Hokohitanga o ngā hui Frequency of meetings	8
15. Kotahitanga Quorum.....	8
16. He utu Payment	8
17. Whakaoti raruraru Conflict resolution.....	9
18. Ngā purongo Reporting - accountability	9
19. Arotakenga Review	9
20. Tuku mahi Delegations.....	9
Appendices.....	10
Council Vision, mission and areas of focus (Long Term Plan 2018-28).....	10
TTMAC Iwi/Hapū geographic representation	11

1. Kupu whakataki | Background

This Terms of Reference recognises that this agreement is not intended to be a legally binding document, but rather a document that encourages and supports an enduring and long-term relationship between Northland Regional Council and the tāngata whenua of Te Taitokerau.

It also recognises that although two distinct partners, each bringing their own perspective to the table, that the tāngata whenua of Te Taitokerau and council may share common aspirations in regard to the environmental, social, cultural and economic future of our shared region.

This agreement also appreciates that it will be through goodwill and cooperation that trust will develop and therefore a relationship based on mutual respect.

2. Ngā roopū | The Parties

This agreement is between tāngata whenua of Te Taitokerau and Northland Regional Council.

Tāngata Whenua of Te Taitokerau

Tāngata whenua of Te Taitokerau are extremely passionate about their heritage and give regard to Te Tiriti o Waitangi as the founding document of this country and recognises a partnership between Māori and the Crown, for Māori, further cementing the intent of He Whakaputanga o Te Rangatiratanga o Nū Tīreni (1835 Declaration of Independence).

The statement of intent in regard to these for tāngata whenua are :

He Whakaputanga o Te Rangatiratanga o Nū Tīreni (Declaration of Independence) and Te Tiriti o Waitangi provide the foundation doctrines of authority and partnership that are being sought by iwi and hapū in government, including local government.

Northland Regional Council

The Northland Regional Council (council) is the regional authority with responsibilities defined in the Local Government Act 2002, which provide for its obligations to Māori under the Treaty of Waitangi including:

- To take appropriate account of the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi; and
- To maintain and improve opportunities for Māori to contribute to local government decision making processes.

3. Te Kaupapa | Mission Statement

Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party:

- Provides a forum that emphasises and advocates te Ao Māori; the Māori world view
- A means by which the Māori perspective is valued, influences and challenges processes and policy
- A stable platform for whānau, hapū and iwi to connect and communicate with each other
- A safe haven for open and forthright discussion
- Provides strong leadership in consultation with tāngata whenua and Māori communities.

4. He Tirohanga Māori | Vision Statement 2030

The working party will reflect a (true) partnership that respects the mana and authority of tangata whenua of Te Taitokerau and council. This is determined by an enduring relationship committed to the protection and preservation of our natural environment by:

- Representing the view of Māori in Te Taitokerau in council matters significant to tāngata whenua
- The application of Te Ao Māori or the Māori world view e.g. Mātauranga Māori, kaitiakitanga, mauri in council policies and processes

Please refer to Appendix 1 for council's overarching vision, mission and areas of focus (LTP).

5. Ngā Ture | Values

The following engagement principles will guide the committee in the pursuit of its purpose:

- Titiro ki ngā taumata o te moana takiri ko te ata - Always remain strategic in our approach/intent/view
- Mahi Tahi Tutuki noa – increased collaboration and completion of projects
- Me whakatau mā roto i te kōrero – a willingness to work in collaboration
- Kaitiakitanga – Dedicated stewardship of tangata whenua of Te Taitokerau
- Ngākau pono – Being true to the purpose of the partnership

6. Ngā whainga | Objectives

To advance Māori engagement that supports environmental, social, cultural and economic priorities across the region:

- Monitor and advise on council's compliance to its obligations to Māori under the Local Government Act 2002 and the Resource Management Act 1991 (assurance and compliance function)
- Provide advice to council on topics referred to it by council
- Provide advice to council on topics of strategic importance and relevance to tāngata whenua
- To develop pathways (and processes) that will achieve lasting and meaningful relationships between tāngata whenua and council
- To ensure the views of tangata whenua are taken into account in the exercise of council functions
- To provide access to specialist Māori technical advice via the Māori Technical Advisory Group.

Te Taitokerau Māori and Council Working Party members can provide advice based only on information presented and does not replace council's obligation to consult with iwi and hapū. Council also acknowledges that iwi and hapū representative members' advice does not usurp the mana of iwi and hapū of Taitokerau to make decisions and representations to council on issues of importance to them.

7. Ngā mema | Membership

The working party will comprise up to 30 members in total consisting of:

Nine elected members (councillors) and twenty-one appointed iwi and hapū members from Taitokerau Māori (one representative per iwi and hapū).

To ensure regional representation from the twenty-one appointed iwi and hapū members from Taitokerau Māori, these positions will be filled based on the geographic representation outlined in Appendix 2. In order to maintain the ability to provide geographic representation in TTMAC, should a position not be filled within a geographic area, that position will remain vacant and available to be filled in the future by iwi and/or hapū whose rohe overlaps that mapped geographic area.

Iwi representation will include one member from each of the following ten Iwi Authorities:

- Ngāti Kuri Trust Board
- Te Rūnanga Nui O Te Aupōuri
- Te Rūnanga O Ngāi Takoto
- Te Rūnanga-a-Iwi O Ngāti Kahu
- Te Rūnanga O Te Rarawa
- Te Rūnanga O Whāingaroa
- Te Rūnanga A Iwi O Ngāpuhi
- Ngātiwai Trust Board
- Te Rūnanga O Ngāti Whātua
- Te Roroa

Should one of the above iwi decide not to fill their position, they may choose to endorse a hapū and hapū representative to fill their position. Priority will be given to the following tāngata whenua groupings who have previously had a representative on the working party, in recognition of their early and ongoing commitment to this relationship and kaupapa listed below:

- Ngāti Hine
- Te Whakapiko Hapu
- Ngāti Manu
- Hokianga O Ngā Hapū¹
- Ngāti Rēhia
- Te Uri o Hau
- Te Waiariki
- Ngāti Kororā
- Ngāti Takapari
- Ngāti Kuta, Patukeha
- Te Parawhau
- Ngati Tara
- Te Whakaminenga O Te Hikutu Hapū-Whānau²
- Patuharakeke

¹ Ngati Pakau, Mahurehure, Ngatikorokoro

² Te Hikutu/Whanau Whero/Whanautara/Ngati Kairewa/Ngati Kerewhiti/Ngati Parenga/Ngati Tuapango

Should one of the above tāngata whenua groupings not take up a position on TTMAC, and a position still be available within a geographic area (as mapped in Appendix 2), then that position can be filled by another hapū within that geographic area.

Nominations received from hapū not currently represented on the working party will be presented to council for ratification following consultation with the working party co-chairs. Such nominations must be accompanied with documentation, to the satisfaction of the co-chairs, that the nominee has formally been mandated by hapū to represent them on the working party.

The following procedure will be followed once working party membership reaches 30 and a nomination is received from hapū not currently represented on the working party:

1. Priority will be provided for one member from each group as indicated above.
2. The working party will seek to achieve as wide and even representation as possible.
3. Once full representation is achieved from all priority groups listed above, then new membership is only available by attrition.

Iwi/hapū can nominate an alternate/proxy representative to act on behalf of an absent primary representative.

8. Ngā mema tangohia | Removal and replacement of members

Iwi and hapū will undertake their own selection and mandating process to identify their representative and proxy for the working party.

When selecting its representative, iwi/hapū are encouraged to consider gender equality, and the range of skills and experience required for the working party to adequately perform their role.

Changes to an iwi/hapū nominated representative needs to be formally notified to council however does not require council endorsement. For clarity, section 8 above relates to iwi and hapū who don't already have representation on the working party.

Membership of the group shall cease if a member:

- resigns, or
- fails to attend at least three consecutive meetings over the period of one year without tabling a request for leave of absence.

A member can be removed from the working party by council, following receipt of a recommendation passed by 75% of members of the working party present and voting, under exceptional circumstances where the behaviour of the member is considered detrimental to the effective operation of the working party.

If a member resigns or is removed from the working party, all efforts will be made to fill any vacancies as soon as possible.

9. Ngā Heamana | Co-Chairs

Provision has been made for this working party to have a Co-Chair arrangement. The following process will be undertaken to fill the position of Co-Chairs.

Council will appoint one elected member (and proxy) as their representative to act as Co-Chair. The non-elected members of the working party will appoint a Co-Chair (and proxy), from the non-elected members. Both recommendations are to be endorsed by council.

At least one Co-Chair must be present at the formal meetings and marae-based hui of the working party.

Besides chairing meetings, the Co-Chairs (or proxy) will be responsible for:

- attending agenda preview meetings and reviewing working party actions prior to circulation
- be available to vet prospective applications for membership onto the working party
- assist in mediation when required, in the first instance.

10. Te Wahanga | Term of appointment

The standard term of appointment will be three years – consistent with the term of local and territorial authorities – in this case, the 2019-2022 local body triennium. The term of appointment can be less than three years if a representative:

- resigns
- is replaced by the representatives nominating iwi/hapū
- misses three consecutive meetings, or
- the working party is disbanded.

A member can be appointed as many times as their nominating iwi / hapū re-endorse their selection.

11. Whakamahinga | Operation

Council's Chief Executive Officer (CEO) and Group Manager – Strategy, Governance and Engagement are the senior managers responsible for this working party and shall attend all meetings and hui in this capacity.

The CEO or such person as he may from time to time appoint, and other council staff designated by him, will be responsible for the maintenance and servicing of the working party (provision of venue, minute-taking, catering).

Support for the working party extends to council's controlled organisation, Northland Inc through the CEO and staff.

12. Arataki tangata | Member induction

All new members joining the working party will receive an induction pack which will include the Terms of Reference, relevant policies and procedures and information outlining the council's function and processes.

13. Papā o te pānga | Conflict of interest

Members will be asked to complete a conflict of interest form at the beginning of each year they sit on the group. A conflict of interest log will be maintained by the officer responsible for liaising with the group and members are asked to declare a potential conflict of interest at each meeting.

14. Hokohitanga o ngā hui | Frequency of meetings

The working party will meet up to a maximum of 10 times a year. These will alternate between a formal meeting of the working party which will be held at the council's office in Whangārei and workshops at marae focusing on local issues (i.e. up to five formal meeting and five marae-based workshops.)

While any working party member is welcome to attend the marae-based workshops, these workshops will not constitute a formal working party meeting and therefore no working party actions can be agreed. All working party members attending council approved marae-based hui are eligible for meeting fee allowances and mileage.

When the full working party meets at the Whangārei office of the regional council a meeting room will be made available before or after the meeting of the working party in order for the Māori members of the working party to meet.

15. Kotahitanga | Quorum

The following quorum will apply:

- At least a third of the elected members (councillors), and
- At least a third of non-elected members.

This ratio will apply to those seats that are currently filled and not include vacant positions.

16. He utu | Payment

Payments for non-elected members of the working party (iwi and hapu representatives) for meeting attendance and mileage will be in accordance with the councils 'Appointed Members Allowance Policy' and in accordance with this Terms of Reference.

Payments include:

- Meeting allowance for meetings of the working party
- Mileage (one claim per vehicle)
- Attendance at Other working parties, as endorsed by council.

17. Whakaoti raruraru | Conflict resolution

Should conflict occur, the Co-Chairs and the working party will be responsible for working together to resolve the conflict in the first instance. If the conflict persists, the council will only intervene at the request of the majority of the working party members.

18. Ngā purongo | Reporting - accountability

The working party, through the Co-Chairs will provide a summary report to the council following each meeting.

Working party members are expected to report back to and liaise regularly with their respective nominating iwi / hapū communities – providing information to their constituents and seeking their feedback.

Officers of council will be responsible for promoting the working party and any initiatives developed (once considered and approved by council), to the wider public through a range of media including print and radio promotion, the council's website and social media.

19. Arotakenga | Review

The Terms of Reference will subsequently be reviewed as required. All changes to the Terms of Reference will be subject to the approval of Northland Regional Council through a recommendation made by the working party.

20. Tuku mahi | Delegations

The working part has no delegated authority from council.

Appendices

Appendix 1

Council Vision, mission and areas of focus (Long Term Plan 2018-28)

Our Northland – together we thrive. Working together to create a healthy environment, strong economy and resilient communities.

This working party will contribute directly to the following areas of focus:

- Continuous improvement in water quality and security of supply
- Enhancement of indigenous biodiversity and biosecurity
- A strong regional economy
- Safe and resilient communities
- Enduring relationships with tāngata whenua

Appendix 2

TTMAC Iwi/Hapū geographic representation



Northland Regional Council

P 0800 002 004

E info@nrc.govt.nz

W www.nrc.govt.nz

TITLE: Annual Report on the Biosecurity Operational Plan

From: Don McKenzie, Pou Tiaki Pūtaiao - GM Biosecurity

Authorised by Don McKenzie, Pou Tiaki Pūtaiao - GM Biosecurity, on 17 November 2022
Group Manager/s:

Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga

The annual report on the Biosecurity Operational Plan 2021-2022 is a statutory requirement of the Biosecurity Act. The attached report highlights the substantial amount of work undertaken by the Biosecurity team, in partnership with tangata whenua, community groups, crown agencies and national initiatives such as Predator Free 2050. The majority of performance targets have been achieved or achieved in part however the effects of covid and staff shortages has caused some disruption to delivery.

Recommendation(s)

1. That the report 'Annual Report on the Biosecurity Operational Plan' by Don McKenzie, Pou Tiaki Pūtaiao - GM Biosecurity and dated 18 October 2022, be received.
 2. That council adopts the Biosecurity Annual Report as the record of actions undertaken during the 2021-2022 year and in accordance with the objectives of the Pest Management and Marine Pathway Management Plan 2017-2027.
 3. That the Biosecurity Group Manager be delegated authority to make any minor design, editing, grammatical or accuracy amendments, prior to the Annual Report being published.
-

Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Council determines not to adopt the Annual Report	Provides an opportunity for changes in the way data are presented or other significant edits	Delays the production of a final copy for wider community and agency distribution. Further extends the delay in meeting the statutory deadline of the end of November.
2	Council adopts the report	The report can be distributed to community and agency networks promptly.	NIL

The staff's recommended option is Option 2, that council adopt the Biosecurity Annual Report. It is the intention of staff that the Annual Report and the results, once adopted by council, will form the basis for greater public engagement and promotion of the work council does with the community.

Considerations

1. Climate Impact

The effects of this report on climate change and the recommendations are expected to be neutral.

Environmental Impact

This decision is a statutory requirement concerning reporting and will have no direct impact on the environment.

2. Community views

This decision is unlikely to have any impact on external agencies, Māori, and other interest groups. They may, however, be interested in the content and have a view on the progress being made on the performance measures.

3. Māori impact statement

This report relates to a council administrative matter and therefore does not have a direct impact on Māori. Any potential impacts of future related decisions will be addressed in the relevant reports.

4. Financial implications

There are no financial implications of this decision, and the Annual Report has been produced using current resourcing

5. Implementation issues

While this decision concerns reporting on operational matters, as indicated above, it is intended that council will seek to communicate these results as broadly as possible so that our community has a good understanding of the work being undertaken.

6. Significance and engagement

In relation to section 79 of the Local Government Act 2002, this decision is considered to be of low significance when assessed against council's significance and engagement policy. It has previously been consulted on and provided for in council's Long- Term Plan and/or is part of council's day to day activities. This does not mean that this matter is not of significance to tangata whenua and/or individual communities, but that council is able to make decisions relating to this matter without undertaking further consultation or engagement.

7. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance

This decision is consistent with the requirements of section 100b of the Biosecurity Act 1993.

Background/Tuhinga

Northland Regional Council is the management agency responsible for developing and implementing the Northland Regional Pest and Marine Pathway Management Plan 2017-2027 in accordance with the Biosecurity Act 1993 (hereafter referred to as the Pest Plan). The Pest Plan is a combination of the eradication or effective management of specified pests (or groups of pests), and a marine pathway plan is designed to prevent and manage the spread of harmful marine organisms via boat hull fouling within Northland coastal waters.

An Operational Plan is prepared and reviewed annually as a requirement of the Biosecurity Act 1993 (section 100B). It describes how the Pest Plan will be implemented for a given year and council has a statutory requirement under the Act to report on progress in the previous year by the end of November 2022.

This Annual Report on the Operational Plan 2021-2022 (attached) is the fourth produced under the 10-year Pest Plan. The report notes progress made against aims, objectives and key performance indicators contained in the Operational Plan and expands on these where appropriate.

Summary of results

The report describes performance measures for each pest category and more than 75% have been achieved or achieved in part. Performance measures that have not been achieved were due to covid causing delays, staff capacity issues which have since been addressed as part of the Long-Term Plan or involve measures where the data have not been available in the current year.

The data shows that several event days and workshops for pest plants and animals as well as for kauri protection could not be held due to covid restrictions. Although these events were reduced in number, 95 people attended weed workshops throughout the year and over 960 students received kauri protection training and a further 91 students attained NCEA credits as part of animal pest training.

Community pest control groups were still active when restrictions were lifted over the year and staff provided over 6,500 traps to customers and received more than 2,800 pest animal and 1,200 pest plant enquires.

The marine team exceeded the hull inspection target of 2,000 per annum and conducted marine pest workshops and stakeholder awareness training. In addition, a strong partnership was formed last year and sustained through 2022 with Patuharakeke to undertake marine surveys and assist with training kaimahi in the early detection of marine pests being transported into high-risk marinas.

The Pest Control Hub data also shows more than 85,000 page views for all pest species up from 42,000 the previous year, and across the key themes of biosecurity including Plant, Animal, Disease, Freshwater and Marine.

Partnerships with other agencies such as the Ministry for Primary Industries, Department of Conservation and Predator Free 2050 were sustained and over \$4M of external agency funding was received to support new and existing projects. In addition, the number of bicultural collaborations with iwi, hapū and whanau saw more than ten partnerships either start or continue to strengthen across marine, kauri protection, wilding pine control, animal, and pest plant biosecurity.

The increased interest in biosecurity activities is evidence that Northlanders are seeking more information on what kinds of pest management services are available and how they can be involved. It also reflects the growing awareness of national campaigns such as "Predator Free 2050", and regional initiatives like the "Kiwi Coast".

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: Annual Report on the Biosecurity Operational Plan 2021 2022 [!\[\]\(0fb13ad0bfa3d86868cdd3883e5665b3_img.jpg\) !\[\]\(0f2e4c692d3a707bde52a963c276fa9a_img.jpg\)](#)

Annual Report

on the Biosecurity Operational Plan

He Pūrongo Mahi Haumaru Koiora

2021-2022



Foreword

Nau mai, haere mai

Welcome to the annual report on biosecurity for the Northland Regional Council.

Within these pages you will see the progress the Northland Regional Council has made over the last year with implementation of the Northland Regional Pest and Marine Pathway Management Plan 2017-2027 via both council-led programmes and with community-led pest and weed management. Community and landowner pest management is now operating at a landscape scale, and we are proud to support its continued growth. These initiatives are restoring kiwi populations and other rare biodiversity across more than 241,000 hectares of Te Taitokerau via High Value Area programmes and Kiwi Coast.

New research has also provided evidence that browsing pests like deer, goats and possums are making a significant contribution to climate change by eating their way through our native forests and we aim to turn the tide on that for Te Taitokerau. Other pest actions include Predator Free 2050, which is underway, and we highlight our involvement in this aspirational programme. We also describe a tough ongoing battle with weeds including wilding pines and the awesome efforts of weed action across the region.

Kauri protection also features, and we showcase what is happening in marine biosecurity both within the region and across the top of the north.

Relationships with our Te Tiriti partners continue to grow evidenced by more than 20 collaborations now underway with iwi, hapū and whānau- these relationships form the foundation of projects which we aim to sustain well into the future. We have also worked hard to develop relationships with the crown agencies of the Department of Conservation and Ministry for Primary Industries and co-funded projects where a collective agency approach is required. An exciting example of this is the recent allocation for \$30M dollars by central government to address feral deer populations throughout Aotearoa. Our region is uniquely placed to receive funding to achieve eradication of feral deer and in doing so, safeguard our kauri forests and protect our rural economy from stock diseases like bovine tuberculosis- a disease that feral deer can carry.

Our goal is to keep supporting the aspirations of Northlanders for a better environment. We can't do it alone and we wish to thank everyone who takes the time to report anything unusual - you are the eyes and ears of better biosecurity for our region, and we welcome your ideas to help protect our environment, our culture and economic future.

Our Northland -together we thrive.

Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - CEO

xxxxx

Chair xxxxxxxx Working Party (TBC)

Northland Regional Council

Read below the summary report on the significant damaging impact browsing pests are having on climate change:

<https://www.forestandbird.org.nz/sites/default/files/2021-06/Native%20Habitat%20Carbon%20in%20Crisis%20Report%20v2.pdf>

Contents

1.	Introduction / Timitanga kōrero	4
2.	Pest Species in the Plan / Ngā riwaha katoa i te rautaki	6
3.	Financial Summary / Whakarāpopoto a pūtea	7
4.	Community Engagement and Bicultural Collaboration / Ngā hui te hapori	8
5.	Pest Plants / Riha otaota	11
6.	Pest Animals / Riha rāwaho	34
7.	Kauri Protection / Kia tūpato	57
8.	Freshwater Pests / Riha wai māori	65
9.	Marine Pests and Pathways / Riha tai me te huarahi ki mua	79

1. Introduction

Timitanga kōrero



1. Timitanga kōrero | Introduction

Background

The Northland Regional Council (council) is the management agency responsible for developing and implementing the Northland Regional Pest and Marine Pathway Management Plan 2017-2027 in accordance with the Biosecurity Act 1993 (Pest Plan). The Pest Plan is a combination of the eradication or effective management of specified pests (or groups of pests), and a marine pathway plan designed to prevent and manage the spread of harmful marine organisms via boat hull fouling within Northland coastal waters.

An Operational Plan is prepared and reviewed annually as a requirement of the Biosecurity Act 1993 (section 100B). It describes how the

Pest Plan will be implemented for a given year. Council has a statutory requirement under the Act to report on progress in implementing the Pest Plan within five months of the end of the relevant financial year.

This Annual Report on the Operational Plan 2021-2022 is the fourth produced under the 10-year Pest Plan. The report notes progress made against aims, objectives and performance measures contained in the Operational Plan and expands on these where appropriate. This report should be read in conjunction with the Operational Plan 2021-2022 and the Northland Regional Pest and Marine Pathway Plan 2017-2027.

Practical Pest Management

Pest management delivery is undertaken by Council in the following areas:

Partnerships	Pest animal and weed projects with communities, iwi and hapū.
Pest Plants	Pest Plant control and enforcement led by Council, focused on preventing the spread and establishment of low incidence species and reducing impacts of sustained control species.
Incursions & Response	Delivery of: - Wild animal control - Incursion response - Freshwater pest animals and the Check, Clean, Dry programme
Marine	Eradication and control of marine pests
Kauri Protection	Regional actions to protect kauri and to meet the objectives of the kauri national plan.
Predator Free 2050	Whangārei and Bay of Islands (Pēwhairangi Whānui) projects

Council achieves practical pest management by:

- Requiring residents to adhere to pest or pathway management rules
- Undertaking inspections of properties and places
- Carrying out direct control (service delivery) of high threat pests where council is best placed to coordinate control efforts
- Promoting awareness and providing education and practical advice to residents on biosecurity issues and actions.
- Supporting community-led pest management activities through non-regulatory approaches such as council's biosecurity partnerships.

2. Ngā riwha katoa i te rautaki | Pest Species in the Plan



NUMBER OF SPECIES (OR GROUPS OF SPECIES) IN THE PEST PLAN						
Type of Pest	Exclusion	Eradication	Progressive Containment	Sustained Control	Banned from sale or distribution	Total
Plants	13	22	5	18	35	93
Animals	11	3		12		26
Diseases				1		1
Fresh water	3	8	3	2		16
Marine				7		7
Total	27	33	8	40	35	143

3. Whakarāpopoto ā pūtea | Financial Summary

During the year significant external funding was received from the Ministry for Primary Industries for Kauri Protection. Funding was also received from the following external agencies:

Ministry for Primary Industries:

Manchurian Wild rice control \$300k

Wilding pine removal \$1.4m

Kauri Protection of approximately \$1 million

Marine incursions \$115k

MBIE: Kauri Boardwalk Development \$2m (of which \$1m drawn down)

Department of Conservation: Wild Deer programme for Northland \$50k

In addition, \$740k of external funding was drawn down for Predator Free F2050.

Delays with recruitment and partnership agreements due to Covid 19 resulted in a variance of \$352,902 (2.7% of expenditure) as at the end of June 2022.

Biosecurity Activities 2021- 2022	Budget (revised)	Actual	Variance
Expenditure	\$14,029,024	\$12,942,325	\$1,086,699
Revenue	\$11,806,498	\$11,072,701	-\$733,797
Operational deficit/surplus	-\$2,222,526	-\$1,869,624	\$352,902

4. Community Engagement and Bicultural collaboration

Performance Measure	Result	Details
Bicultural collaboration The number of relationships or collaborative projects underway with hapū, whānau or iwi increases by a minimum of 5% annually.	Achieved 20 collaborations in 21/22 up from 11 the previous year	At the end of 2021-2022, the Biosecurity team had new and strengthened collaborative relationships established with hapū, whānau or iwi as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Te Rūnunga o Te kao / Te Aupōuri iwi – Wilding conifers • Ngāti kuri – wildign conifers • Te Orewai Te Horo Trust- Wilding conifers • Pātāua Tiaki Whenua Project Community Pest Control Area • Aki Tai Here – pest plants and PF2050 • Whirinaki Toiora Trust – Kaimahi for nature support • Patuharakeke - Piroa brynderwyn High Value Area, Kauri protection and marine biosecurity • Te Uri o Hau - Piroa brynderwyn High Value Area and Kauri protection • Ngati Hine Forestry – Kaimahi for nature support for farm restoration • Ngati Torēhina; Ngati Rehia; Patukeha; Ngati Kuta - PF2050 • Ngati Tirairaka o Ngati Hine – Restoration of Motatau Maunga and Kauri protection • Ngapuhi – Kauri protection • 3B2 Trust Rāwhiti – PF2050 and Kauri protection • Te Rarawa – Kauri protection • Ngāti Torehine ki Matakā – Marine biosecurity • Te Waiariki – Marine biosecurity
Bicultural capability All permanent staff will have achieved competency level 1 in council's Te Whāriki workshops.	Achieved	All permanent staff in the Biosecurity Group have achieved competency in level 1 of the Te Whāriki workshops, or in the case of recently employed staff they are booked in for this training.

Events

During the year many events were cancelled or unable to run due to Covid-19 regulations. Events are a vital part of the community engagement work carried out by the council biosecurity team and it has been difficult navigating two years of Covid-related restrictions.

The team looks forward to a reinvigorated events season in 2022-2023.

Pest Control Hub

The Pest Control Hub is the council's interactive portal, reached through the NRC website, that enables the public to identify pests and report them.

There were 85,543 visits to the Pest Control Hub homepage between 1 July 2021 and 30 June 2022, in comparison with 42,421 visits in the prior year, demonstrating the increasing success of the Hub as an awareness-raising and reporting tool.

Social Media and Media Engagement

The biosecurity team continues to actively engage via the council's Facebook site, website and with regular media releases.

Performance Measure	Result	Details
Community Engagement – social media Total number of social media interactions is maintained or is greater than the previous year.	Achieved	We have previously recorded this measure via total number of various social media posts and views; however, due to changes in the way data are collected this year's statistics are not directly comparable to previous years. A more useful metric is the engagement data from social media interactions. Below we highlight the top three facebook posts during 2021 -2022 as an example which shows we regularly achieve greater than industry standard rates of engagement on biosecurity issues.

Most popular Facebook posts

Metrics explained

How is our engagement rate compared to other pages?

Engagement metric 1 = $\frac{\text{Likes} + \text{Comments} + \text{Shares (for the post)}}{\text{Total Fans}}$

Industry average = 1% – 2%

Date/Month/Year	Post	Metric 1 Engagement / Total Fans
28 July 2021	<u>Toxic Sea Slug found at Mangawhai Heads</u>	7.89%
20 April 2022	<u>Media release on the revamped section of Te Araroa trail</u>	2.95%
26 June 2022	<u>Video on Far North wilding pines project</u>	1%



Left: Toxic Sea Slug



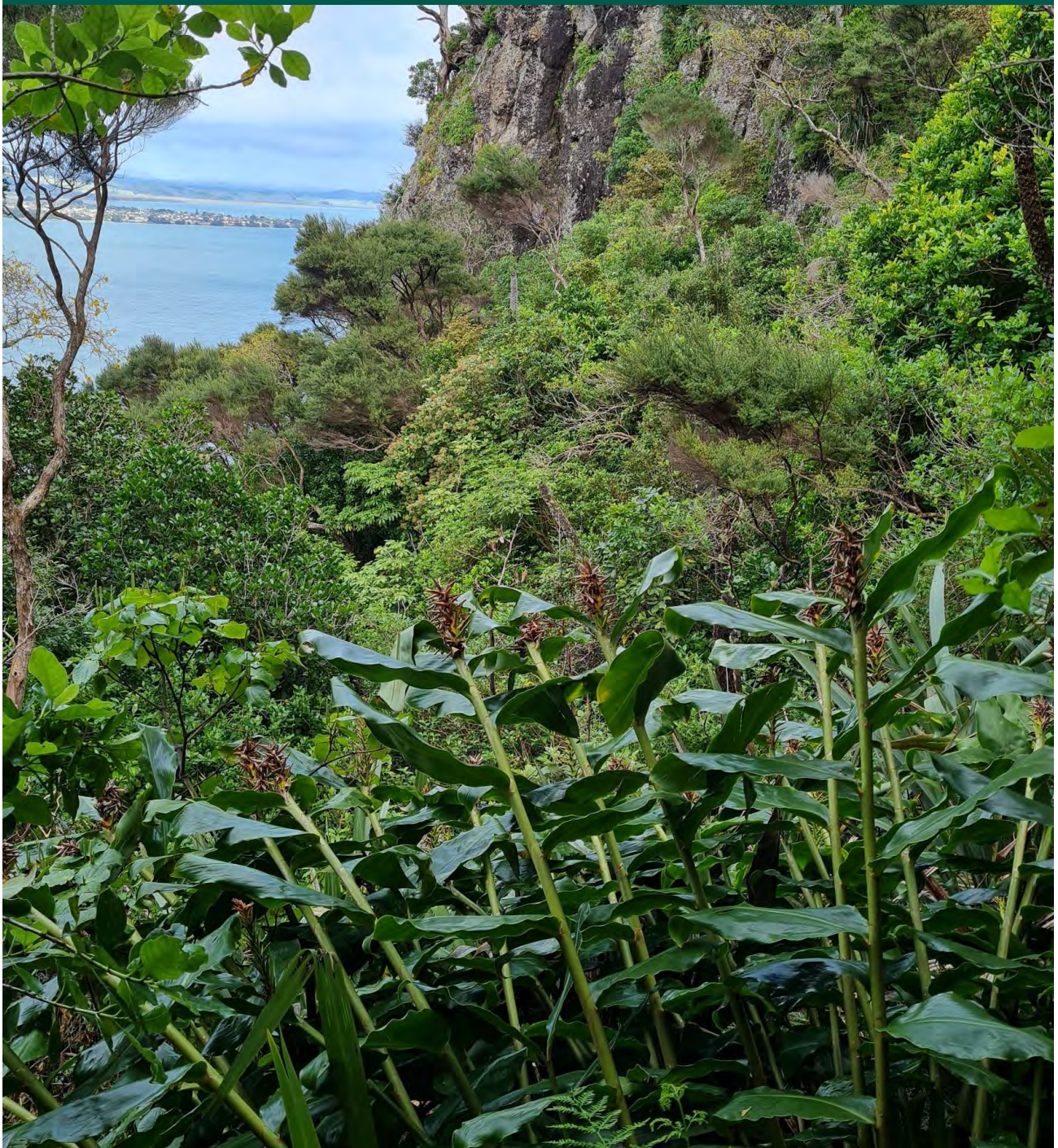
Above: Wilding pines project

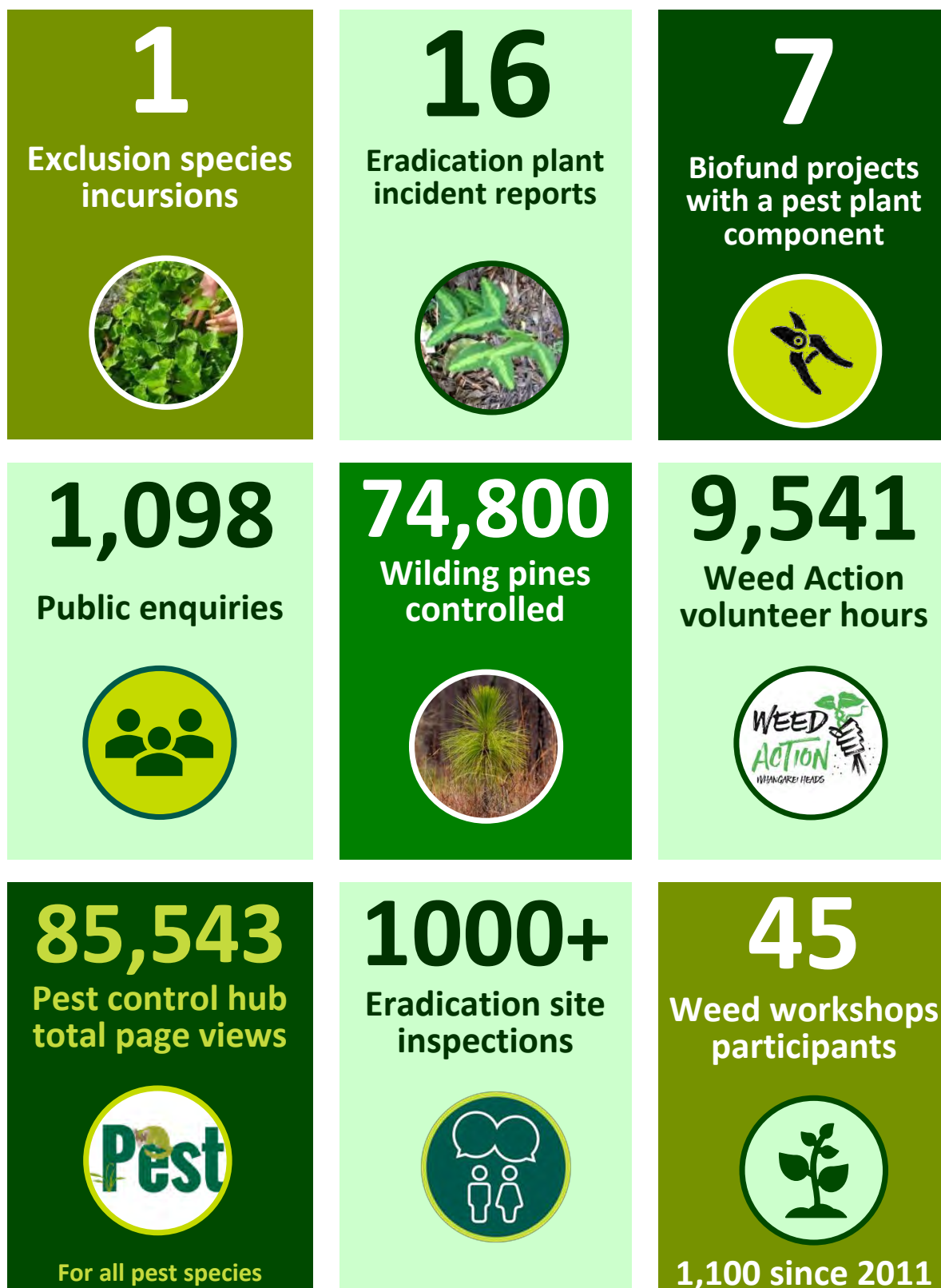
Left: Te Araroa trail



5. Pest Plants

Riha otaota





5.1 Exclusion plants

Key points of the exclusion pest plant programme

- Enforcement of rules relating to exclusion plants.
- Eradication of exclusion plants found in Northland.
- Inspection and enforcement of rules relating to plant nurseries and retail outlets (National Pest Plant Accord). This performance measure is reported in *Section 6.4 Sustained control plants*

Progress in achieving aims

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Identify new sites New incursion sites of exclusion plants are identified through passive and active surveillance by council staff, the public, or through regional surveillance.	Achieved		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Confirmed incursions	1	0	1
A single site of the exclusion species Climbing spindleberry (<i>Celastrus orbiculatus</i>) was discovered in the Onerahi area by a Biosecurity Officer. There was one report of potential velvet leaf infestation by the public. The site was inspected and found to be a juvenile whau plant.					
Incident investigation and response <ul style="list-style-type: none">Initial investigations for all reports undertaken within 5 working days.Response plans developed and implemented within 20 working days.	Achieved	Initial investigation of the single potential incursion was undertaken within 5 working days and response plan completed within 20 days.			
Climbing spindleberry management site This site was discovered in June 2022. The yellow foliage was spotted from the road by a biosecurity officer and was subsequently investigated, confirmed and controlled immediately. An extended search was conducted in the area surrounding the single identified adult plant, but no further plants were detected, despite the plant having been in situ for a long period, given the very large main trunk of vine. Drone survey, digital media and a mail out is planned for next autumn when the foliage of the species is most distinctive. This is the only known site in Northland.					
Houttuynia management sites Ongoing surveillance continued at the two existing Houttuynia management sites (three inspections per annum). At the most recent management site (discovered October 2019), no plants were found over the course of the 2021-2022 visits. The second management site (discovered 2017) 10 seedlings/areas of re-growth were detected on the most recent visit, despite the three previous inspections having been clear, reflecting the persistence of this species.					
Velvetleaf surveillance site Annual surveillance was undertaken at the existing velvetleaf management site (a property which received fodder beet seed from a batch infected with velvetleaf seed in 2016) and no plants were observed.					

5.2 Eradication Plants

Key points of the eradication pest plant programme

- Enforcement of rules relating to eradication plants.
- Eradication of listed eradication pest plants found in Northland.
- Inspection and enforcement of rules relating to plant nurseries and retail outlets (National pest plant accord). This performance measure is reported in **Section 6.4 Sustained control plants**.

Performance Measure	Result	Details						
Identify new sites New incursion sites of eradication plants are identified through passive and active surveillance by council staff, the public, or through regional surveillance. <i>Unbracketed figures are the total confirmed new sites identified in the year.</i> <i>Bracketed figures are the subset of the new sites arising from public reports.</i>	Achieved	New sites identified	2019-20		2020-21		2021-22	
		Bat-wing passionflower	31	(5)	39	(6)	40	(10)
		Mickey mouse plant	16	(2)	181	(8)	160	(4)
		Yellow flag iris	4	(1)	2	(1)	9	
		Evergreen buckthorn	2		1		-	
		Spartina	1	(1)	1	(1)	2	(1)
		Mexican feathergrass	1	(1)			4	
		Wilding kiwifruit	1	(1)	1	(1)	-	
		Firethorn	1		1	(1)	5	(1)
		Akebia	1		1	(1)	-	
		Balloon vine	-		1	(1)	-	
The effectiveness of eradication work is predicated on having a high certainty that most infestation sites are known. In 2021- 2022, there was a continued focus on trying to better delimit some of the eradication species programmes where there was more risk of undetected sites due to previous capacity constraints restricting this type of work. The largest eradication programmes, bat-wing passion flower and Mickey mouse plant were again a particular focus for this work resulting in many new management sites as detailed above and below.								






Eradication species		Identification of new management sites
	Bat-wing passionflower	<p>There were twelve bat-wing passion flower reports received from the public, resulting in 10 confirmed new sites. Some of these reports were prompted by mail outs undertaken in buffer areas surrounding known management sites.</p> <p>Continued intensive surveillance in both residential and forest areas in the buffer area around known sites has again resulted in a significant number of new management sites being detected (40). This is a factor of having had limited capacity in previous years to undertake additional surveillance over and above the scheduled inspection of known management sites, resulting in unknown sites contributing to further spread.</p> <p>Despite further survey work, there were no further infestations of bat-wing detected in the Whangārei Heads area in 2021/2022, following the discovery of an isolated cluster of seedlings in that area in February 2021. (Note: 3 further seedlings have subsequently been detected in Sept 2022).</p>
	Evergreen buckthorn	<p>Further extended abseil search work was undertaken along the coastal cliff in the Sandy Bay area, continuing the search work further north from the infestations confirmed in 2020 -2021. One outlying seedling was discovered, and the existing management area has been extended as a result..</p>
	Field horsetail	<p>No new sites. Juveniles found this year in a different place to previous records, but still within the existing management area, which is believed to have arisen from contaminated fill.</p>
	Firethorn	<p>Four new sites from staff identification in the field. One site is a range expansion from a further delimiting survey.</p> <p>Three reports from the public were investigated. One proved to be a different species of pyracantha, one was not pyracantha, and the other was confirmed as a new site of firethorn (<i>Pyracantha angustifolia</i>).</p>
	Mexican feather grass	<p>Staff identified four new sites via search and traceback around one incidental observation.</p>
	Mickey mouse plant	<p>The extended field surveillance started last year continued, targeting a buffer area around known sites. This again resulted in a significant number of new management sites (160).</p> <p>Six Mickey mouse plant reports were also received from the public with four confirmed as new sites.</p>
	Spartina species	<p>One public report was investigated and confirmed as a new site in the Kaipara harbour.</p> <p>Staff also undertook a desktop analysis of aerial photos and identified and subsequently further confirmed a further site in the Kaipara harbour.</p> <p>A trial using drones was also undertaken at two known sites to assess how successful the technology is in defining known sites and detecting new infestations. Subsequent ground-truthing of the sites is yet to be undertaken.</p>
	Yellow flag iris	<p>Total of nine new sites identified from a staff report and an extended search.</p>

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Incident investigation and response Initial investigations for all reported sightings and/or discoveries of eradication species undertaken within 10 working days and control actions completed within 20 days.	Not achieved		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Incidents reported	26	34	22
		Of the 24 incident reports responded to, seven took longer than the target time for inspection/control actions to be completed.			
Due to the workload posed by the existing known management sites, and the distance of some reports from where staff are based, it is still difficult to be able to respond to all reports within the target period. This was exacerbated in in 2021-2022 by COVID-19 restrictions and illness impacting on staff capacity.					

Performance Measure	Result	Details
Best practice management All management sites visited on scheduled best practice rotation. <i>(based on biological characteristics of each species and defined in the species programme record in the Council's IRIS database).</i>	Achieved in part	Refer species details below.
The frequency of inspection and control for management sites of eradication species is dependent on the species ecology and the site status. Each species has a target inspection schedule that would reduce the risk of plants reaching maturity between inspections based on the growth rate and likelihood of plants being missed in the previous inspection.		
Prior to the addition of new sites from public reports and extended surveillance work undertaken this year, there were 1128 small scale, and 124 moderate to large scale eradication pest plant management sites spread across the Northland region that required regular inspection and control on varying rotations. Despite some additional contract resource for the program in 2020 in 2021, it remains challenging to meet the best practice targets for all management sites, for all species, while still completing surveillance and delimiting work. One additional staff member now working in the Community Partnership space has reduced some workload for the three FTEs that deliver the eradication programme. Staff are continuing to support contract staff to upskill and build capacity to help deliver this work.		
COVID-19 restrictions on staff and contractor field work, and illness during the Omicron wave, also had a major impact on delivery capacity. Three months of the key summer control period were severely impacted. This had a major impact on most programmes, especially those with seasonal restrictions like the spartina programme.		

Eradication plant management site visits 2021-2022			
Eradication plant	Results	Details	
	Akebia	Achieved in part	Best practice (biannual inspection of active sites) was achieved for 57% of sites. Two active sites received a single inspection and treatment visit, one site was not inspected, while the remainder received two inspection/control visits.
	Balloon vine	Achieved	The target annual inspection and control activity was undertaken for each of the two existing large-scale balloon vine management sites. Additional extended surveillance was undertaken for the site identified late last year.
	Bat-wing passionflower	Not achieved	Best practice (triannual inspection/ four monthly inspection rotation) was only achieved for 1.6% of sites, as very few sites received three inspections/treatments in 2021- 2022. It remains challenging to resource more than 900 inspections required per annum to meet the best practice target. The current manual data recording and entry system is also very time consuming and inefficient and adds significantly to workload. Work continues to build contractor resource and capacity, and develop a replacement database with spatial data capture, management and reporting capabilities.

	Cape tulip	Not applicable	Managed by Ministry for Primary Industries.
	Cathedral bells	Achieved in part	Best practice (biannual inspection of active sites) was achieved for 50% of sites; three active sites received only one site visit, rather than the target of two. Two of those sites are approaching status change to Monitoring, with no plants detected. At the fourth site, a significant new area of infestation found and treated.
	Chilean rhubarb	Not achieved	The large Chilean rhubarb infestation area did not receive the planned annual survey and control.
	Evergreen buckthorn	Not achieved	Best practice (biannual inspection of active sites) was only achieved for 30% of sites
	Field horsetail	Achieved	The targeted biannual inspection and control were undertaken.
	Firethorn	Achieved in part	Best practice (annual inspection of active sites) was achieved for 57% of sites. Three Active sites did not receive annual inspection and control.
	Gypsywort	Not applicable	Managed by the Department of Conservation and Fish and Game New Zealand.
	Lesser knotweed	Not achieved	Best practice not achieved (updated best practice now triannual inspection of active sites). Single and inspection and control visit only due to restriction's around rail line access and COVID.
	Mexican feather grass	Achieved in part	Best practice (annual inspection of active sites) was achieved for 80% of sites. One active site did not receive annual inspection. One historic site still on record with insufficient location information.
	Mickey mouse plant	Achieved in part	Best practice of biennial inspection and control was achieved for 86% of sites, and extended searches undertaken in buffer zone of known infestation sites.
	Monkey musk	Not achieved	Best practice of biannual inspection and control not achieved. Three sites received only a a single inspection and treatment visit. One site was inspected but not controlled due to access issues/landowner concerns
	Nassella tussock	Not achieved	The single active coastal cliff site and surrounds was searched by staff and abseil contractors in 2021-2022, and two further monitoring sites were searched. The remaining Monitoring sites were not searched due to capacity issues. These are large scale sites on long-term reinspection timeframes. 20 of these sites are due for re-inspection, and a further 10 historic sites have been identified for final inspections to confirm as eradicated (20 years). Resourcing this work remains difficult, especially for the sites in regenerating bush, as it is very labour intensive and there are no local trained contractors available for this work.

	Nutgrass	Achieved	Best practice of biannual inspection and control achieved. Two inspections were undertaken at the single known management site. Control required on the most recent.
	Royal fern	Not achieved	One of the two large management sites received annual surveillance and treatment. Scheduled contract ground truthing of drone surveillance and control work in Autumn 2022 was cancelled due to COVID impacts on contractor availability.
	Spartina species	Not achieved	Best practice (annual inspection of active sites) was achieved for 20% of sites. Sites in the Whangaroa Harbour, Taipā, Mangonui, Rangaunu Harbour, and Pārengarenga Harbour were previously managed by the Department of Conservation but are now no longer being actively managed. Before council staff can recommence aquatic herbicide treatment, full consultation with local iwi and hapū will be required. Additional survey and delimitation will also need to be completed. There is still limited capacity to initiate this work, as the current council resource to manage and deliver spartina work in the mid and far north remains a 0.5 FTE role, based in the Waipapa office, that is also responsible for numerous other pest plant species control programmes and community liaison.
	Wilding kiwifruit	-	No existing sites were able to be prioritised for follow up within existing resources. The risk of regrowth at these previously treated sites is very low, and there have been no further reports.
	Yellow flag iris	Achieved in part	Best practice (annual inspection and control) was achieved for 88% of sites. There were 6 sites that did not receive an annual inspection.

Modified performance measure		
Progress towards eradication Annual decrease in number of adult plants observed and/or the infestation area at existing management sites.	Modified measure	Refer species details in table on facing page.
<p>This performance measure is used to determine if current management practices are successful in preventing the maturation of plants (and thereby reducing the risk of spread to new sites), or in reducing the total infestation area. Data recorded are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number of sites with mature foliage – this is as recorded at the most recent inspection. • Count of adult plants – is data for the entire inspection year. • Infestation area – measured at the most recent inspection, for species where count data cannot be utilised. <p>Until the new mobile data collection tools are developed with mandatory fields and units for each species, data collection is still in a transition phase, especially for programmes with sites at a range of scales, where large sites are often recorded by infestation area, and small sites recorded as count data.</p> <p>It should also be noted that based on current technology, infestation area data is subjective. It relies upon observer skills in assessing both area and density to give an estimation of total infestation area.</p> <p>Despite reduced capacity in 2021/2022, there was still progress made on many of the smaller scale programmes. For some of the larger and more challenging programmes however, there was some impact on eradication progress, due to mature plants being found at existing and previously undetected sites.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The akebia programme is showing good progress with one site moved to eradicated, and regrowth but no mature foliage at any of the management site at the last inspection. • The cathedral bells programme has 3 sites in monitoring status, 2 close to status change to monitoring, and only one more significant active site where adult foliage was found. • Of the two large balloon vine management sites, only limited juveniles were found at the site that has been under long term management. The newer site had significantly reduced area since the initial control but 2 plants with mature foliage were found. • The single known site of field horsetail continues to produce the occasional juvenile plant despite 7 years of at least biannual surveillance and control. This species is known to have a long- tail to confirm eradication. • The single management area of lesser knotweed has seen a reduction in infestation area, but needs consistent triannual control to effectively limit re-growth and achieve eradication. • More control effort is required to ensure firethorn management sites are contained and eradicated. Five new sites were added to the program and an extended search of properties adjacent to known roadside site found significantly more adults scattered over 200m² area. • Four new sites of Mexican feathergrass added to that programme. Existing sites now very small/zero density. • In the monkey musk programme there were 2 sites with active growth and mature foliage. No plants were found at the other two sites. • One active site of Nasella with six small plants found in one small area (stunted but still possibly mature foliage). The other sites are in long-term monitoring (20 years to determine eradicated). • The single site of Nutgrass continues to produce seedlings and re-growth despite regular control (c 20 stems at last inspection). • For the yellow flag programme, there is still a relatively high proportion of sites with mature foliage (27% but overall area is reducing and two sites were confirmed eradicated. However, a significant area (70m²) of new infestations was also found. • For the evergreen buckthorn programme, additional extended search work is still required to fully delimit the extent of this species given several sites not receiving scheduled treatment. • Increases in site numbers and adult plants from extended search for Mickey mouse and bat-wing passion flower indicate that these programmes are still not well contained. These are challenging programmes because of their scale, and in case of bat-wing, due to its growth rate to maturity. Forty new sites were recorded for bat-wing and a high count of plants found with mature foliage. One hundred and sixty new sites were recorded for Mickey mouse. Inspections were finding a large proportion of sites had plants with mature foliage present and had a high count of mature plants present in those sites (276 – though it should be noted that this figure is inflated by initial inspection figures for the large number of sites that were new last year still being reflected in the data). 		

Eradication plant	Year	Number of sites		Number of sites with mature foliage		Count of adult plants		Infestation area	
		Existing	New	Existing	New	Existing	New	Existing	New
 Akebia	2019-20	5	1	4 (80%)	1 (100%)			n/a	n/a
	2020-21	6	2	1 (17%)	1 (50%)			100 m ²	7 m ²
	2021-22	7	0	0	-			43.75 m ²	-
 Balloon vine	2019-20	1 (large)	0	0	-			n/a	n/a
	2020-21	1 (large)	1	0	1 (100%)			0.91 m ²	30 m ²
	2021-22	2 (large)	0	1 (50%)	-			3.5 m ²	-
 Bat-wing passionflower	2019-20	259	31	39 (15%)	17 (55%)	72	166		
	2020-21	272	39	42 (15%)	8 (21%)	176	9		
	2021-22	307	40	29 (9%)	19 (48%)	121	39		
 Cathedral bells	2019-20	6	0	2 (33%)	-			1,000 m ²	-
	2020-21	6	0	1 (17%)	-			1,000 m ²	-
	2021-22	6	0	1 (17%)	-			750 m ²	-
 Chilean rhubarb	2019-20	1 (large)	0	1 (large)	-	18	-		
	2020-21	1 (large)	0	1 (large)	-	26	-		
	2021-22	1 (large)	0	1 (large)	-	26	-		
 Evergreen buckthorn	2019-20	46	2	7 (16%)	2 (100%)	29	16		
	2020-21	48	1	9 (18%)	1 (100%)	44	20		
	2021-22	51	0	10 (20%)	-	40	-		
 Field horsetail	2019-20	1	0	0	-	-	-		
	2020-21	1	0	0	-	-	-		
	2021-22	1	0	0	-	-	-		
 Firethorn	2019-20	5	1	1 (20%)	1 (100%)	n/a	1		
	2020-21	6	1	5 (83%)	1 (100%)	n/a	3		
	2021-22	7	5	2 (29%)	5 (100%)	53	9		
 Lesser knotweed	2019-20	1	0	1	-			75 m ²	-
	2020-21	1	0	1	-			92 m ²	-
	2021-22	1	0	1	-			22 m ²	-
 Mexican feather grass	2019-20	5	1	1 (20%)	1 (100%)	5	25		
	2020-21	6	0	2 (33%)	-	6	-		
	2021-22	5	4	1 (20%)	4 (100%)	2	41		
 Mickey mouse plant	2019-20	506	16	84 (17%)	6 (38%)	207	18		
	2020-21	522	181	47 (9%)	59 (33%)	96	187		

Eradication plant	Year	Number of sites		Number of sites with mature foliage		Count of adult plants		Infestation area	
		Existing	New	Existing	New	Existing	New	Existing	New
	2021-22	695	160	112 (16%)	54 (34%)	276	124		
 Monkey musk	2019-20	4	0	2 (50%)	-			n/a	-
	2020-21	4	0	3 (75%)	-			n/a	-
	2021-22	4	0	2 (50%)	-			295 m ²	-
 Nassella tussock	2019-20	33	0	0 (0%)	-	0	-		
	2020-21	33	0	n/a	-	n/a	-		
	2021-22	34	0	1 (2.9%)	-	6	-		
 Nutgrass	2019-20	1	0	0	-	-	-		
	2020-21	1	0	0	-	-	-		
	2021-22	1	0	0	-	-	-	1 m ²	-
 Royal fern	2019-20	3	0	-	-	n/a	-		
	2020-21	3	0	1	-	n/a-	-		
	2021-22	3	0	1 (33%)	-	50	-		
 Spartina	2019-20	120	0	n/a	-			n/a	-
	2020-21	120	1	n/a	n/a			n/a	n/a
	2021-22	116	2	n/a	n/a			102150 m ² *	2320 m ²
 Yellow flag iris	2019-20	45	4	13 (29%)	4 (100%)			n/a	n/a
	2020-21	49	2	18 (37%)	2 (100%)			1,291 m ²	3 m ²
	2021-22	48	9	13 (27%)	9 (100%)			539 m ²	69 m ²

*This is an approximate estimate only; Data is incomplete and infestation area has not been consistently interpreted as extent x density.

5.3 Progressive Containment Plants

Key points of the Progressive Containment programme

- Eradication of plants outside the defined containment zones in Northland.
- Enforcement of rules relating to occupier led control.
- Council will also support communities to reduce the impact of progressive containment pests through non-regulatory biosecurity programmes.

The objectives and rules of the progressive containment plant programme vary by species and location. Control responsibilities are summarised below.

Species	Responsibility for control	
	Outside the containment zone	Inside the containment zone
African feather grass	Council led eradication	Owner-occupier management to reduce the risk of spread
Pultenaea	Council led eradication	Owner-occupier management to reduce the risk of spread
Mile-a-minute	Council led eradication	No requirement to control
Lantana	Owner-occupier management to reduce the risk of spread	No requirement to control
Manchurian wild rice	Ministry for Primary Industries led eradication, delivered by council	No requirement to control

Progress in achieving aims

Annual status reports

Annual reporting on the status and number of new sites of all progressive containment plants is required in the Pest and Operational Plans. With the exception of Manchurian wild rice, the 2021-2022 status reports are detailed in the performance measure tables below. The Manchurian wild rice programme is funded by the Ministry for Primary Industries as part of its National Interest Pest Response Programme and is reported on separately – only highlights from the programme are reported here.

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Identify new sites New sites of progressive containment plants are identified through passive and active surveillance by council staff, the public, or through regional surveillance.	Achieved	New sites identified		2021-2022	
		African feather grass		0	
		Pultenaea		0	
		Mile-a-minute		24	
		Lantana		3	
Incident investigation and response Initial investigations for all reported sightings and/or discoveries of Progressive Containment species are undertaken within 10 working days and decisions documented within 20 working days.	Achieved				
			2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Public reports	8	4	2
COVID-19 restrictions meant that these reports could not be actioned within the target period					

African feather grass

A survey of the existing roadside management units outside of the containment zone was undertaken to audit contractors and ensure there were no undetected infestation sites. No further sites detected.

A second survey was undertaken to finish delimiting the site found on the coast of the Poutō peninsula. A second cluster of infestation sites (approximately 3,925 m²) were found to the north, but still within a relatively contained area.

Lantana





Three new small scale lantana sites were identified and controlled, and the landowners made aware of requirement for follow up control.

Mile-a-minute

An extended search was undertaken in the Bayly's beach area to confirm the boundaries of the infestation in this area given the identification of a second site in 2020/2021. Twenty-two new sites totalling approximately 500m² were found, 6 of which had mature foliage present.

Two other sites were identified by staff, one in urban Whangarei and one a slight range extension (seedlings only) of an existing site in Marsden Point.

Performance Measure	Result	Details
Best practice management All Council managed sites visited on scheduled best practice rotation. <i>(based on biological characteristics of each species and defined in the species programme record in the Council's IRIS database).</i>	Achieved in part	Refer species details below.

Progressive containment plant management site visits 2021-2022			
Pest plant		Results	Details
	African feather grass	Not achieved	Scheduled contract control work in the dune management unit and road management units was not undertaken due to contractor capacity.
	Lantana	Not achieved	Control is undertaken by occupiers, and the programme currently has no set targets for follow up contact with landowners where control or management plans have previously been enforced. Inspection of previous sites for continued compliance had largely been put on hold because of capacity issues, which were exacerbated by COVID-19 restrictions (progressive containment being a lower priority than the eradication work).
	Mile-a-minute	Achieved in part	Best practice (annual inspection for active sites) was completed for 86.7% of management sites.
	Pultenaea	Achieved in part	Best practice (annual inspection for active sites) was undertaken at all except one site.

Modified performance measure		
Progress towards eradication Annual decrease in number of adult plants observed and/or the infestation area at existing Council managed sites.	Modified measure	Refer species details below.
<p>This performance measure is used to determine if current management practices are successful in preventing the maturation of plants (and thereby reducing the risk of spread to new sites), or in reducing the total infestation area. Data recorded are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Number of sites with mature foliage – this is as recorded at the most recent inspection. Count of adult plants – is data for the entire inspection year. Infestation area – measured at the most recent inspection, for species where count data cannot be utilised. <p>Until the new mobile data collection tools are developed with mandatory fields and units for each species, data collection is still in a transition phase, especially for programmes with sites at a range of scales, where large sites are often recorded by infestation area, and small sites recorded as count data.</p> <p>It should also be noted that based on current technology, infestation area data is subjective. It relies upon observer skills in assessing both area and density to give an estimation of total infestation area.</p>		

Eradication plant	Year	Number of sites		Number of sites with mature foliage		Count of adult plants		Infestation area	
		Existing	New	Existing	New	Existing	New	Existing	New
 African feather grass	2019-20	26	0	12 (48%)	-			n/a	-
	2020-21	27 ¹	0	13 (50%)	-			² 7,823 m ²	-
	2021-22	27	0	8 (30%)	1 (100%)			6720 m ²	3,925 m ²
 Mile-a-minute	2019-20	45	0	3 (7%)	-			n/a	-
	2020-21	45	1	2 (4%)	1 (100%)			121 m ²	50 m ²
	2021-22	45	24	10(22%)	7(29%)			372m ²	539m ²
 Pultenaea	2019-20	4	0	3 (75%)	-	131	-		
	2020-21	4	4	4 (100%)	3 (75%)	795 ³	28		
	2021-22	8	0	4 (50%)	-	26	-		

¹ Increase in African feather grass sites is because of splitting of one large management unit into two to improve management and reporting.

² Includes a 6,665 m² infestation site in Poutō sand dunes reported in 2019-2020, but only delimited in 2020-2021.

³ The bulk of these plants came from a large management site that received intensive grid search and control.

Manchurian wild rice

The Manchurian wild rice control programme is carried out in partnership with the Ministry for Primary Industries as part of the National Interest Pest Response Programme (NIPR), and a detailed annual report is produced as part of the funding agreement and is summarized below for 20-21.

Work outside containment (Intransigent) zone

The programme in Northland is based on progressive containment and prioritising sites outside of the Intransigent zone which is centred around the core river infestations, for eradication. Progress toward eradication of sites outside of the intransigent zone can be seen in the change in T.I.M.E ⁴ classification status.

Over the course of the 2021-2022 management period, 22 sites underwent a positive change in classification; 14 Treatment sites were updated to Interim, three Interim sites were updated to a Monitored classification, and five sites were confirmed as eradicated. Eight sites underwent a negative change; seven Interim sites reverted to Treatment, and one Monitored site reverted to Treatment after three fronds of live foliage were found. This is summarised in the table below

Manchurian wild rice treatment site classification changes			
Positive change	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
Treatment to Interim	10	20	14
Treatment to Monitored	-	4	-
Interim to Monitored	9	4	3
Monitored to Eradicated	1	6	5
Negative change	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
Interim to Treatment	3	1	7
Monitored to Interim	-	2	1

Two potential new sites were identified throughout the year, one through public reporting and the other during an extend surveillance survey. The sites were investigated, confirmed, with traceback and delimitation undertaken. At year end the total number of sites under management outside the Intransigent zone was 255.

Covid lockdown and restrictions presented some operational challenges throughout the year, delaying the start time of treatment rounds due to regional travel restrictions and impacting the availability of contractors as they became exposed to the virus. Due to the delays the second round of treatment was pushed into the winter months, so some sites where not accessible due to saturated ground conditions. Despite the challenges 74% of sites received two rounds of treatment.

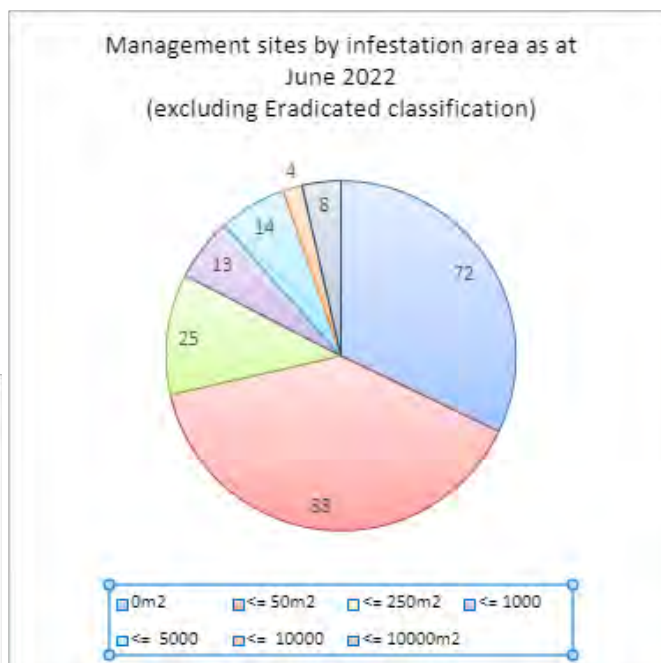
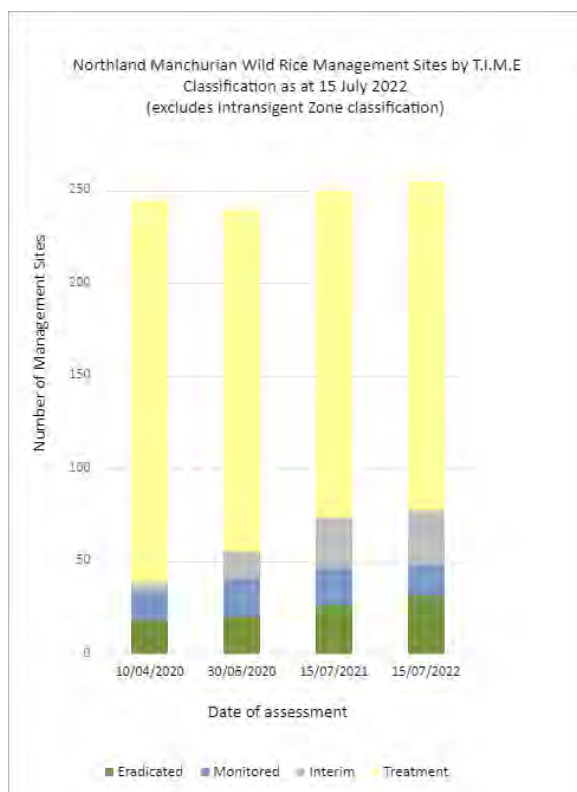


Manchurian wild rice growing along a drainage channel inside the Intransigent zone.

⁴ T.I.M.E treatment site classification system utilized by the Ministry for Primary Industries (T = treatment, I = interim, M = monitored, E = eradicated).

The below graph gives an overview of the total number and relative proportions of management sites by the T.I.M.E classification status as progress is made toward eradication. The positive trend continues, but progress is still slow, reflecting the difficult nature of this species to control.

However, infestation size can also be seen to be reducing; The adjacent pie chart shows the relative proportions of management sites by infestation area, showing that the majority of sites are now relatively small ($\leq 50 \text{ m}^2$), or are sites with little to no live foliage present.



Manchurian wild rice regrowth in a roadside water table.

Inside the containment (Intransigent) zone

Land occupiers are not required to undertake control of Manchurian wild rice on their properties inside the intransigent zone however, council staff continue to work with and support landowners to undertake control, provide advice and information on best practice techniques and herbicide.

NRC was able to supply support and herbicide to 14 landowners undertaking ongoing control, and 11 new landowners commencing control in 2021-2022.

Work is also underway with landowners looking at alternate treatment methods, to reduce herbicide use and time to eradication. The Ministry for Primary Industries has recognised the value in the work being done by Northland farmers and the NRC this year, and has agreed to fund alternative treatment trials and control approaches in the next year of the programme.

5.4 Sustained Control Plants

Key points of the sustained control pest plant programme

- Enforcement of rules relating to sustained control plants.
- Enforcement of Good Neighbour Rules ⁵.
- Inspection and enforcement of rules relating to quarries.
- Inspection and enforcement of rules relating to plant nurseries and retail outlets (National Pest Plant Accord).
- Enforcement of rules relating to road and rail corridors, and development and implementation of management plans relating to the corridors.
- Reducing the impacts of pests that are widespread in suitable habitats throughout Northland. These pests all cause adverse effects to the environmental, economic, social, or cultural values of the region.
- Council will provide education, advice, and support to enable landowners to manage sustained control pests on their properties.

Progress in achieving aims

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Request response time Response to requests from the public on sustained control plant pests responded to within 20 working days.	Response time data not available		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Sustained control pest plant requests	657	1,227	1,098
		The council database reporting system is not currently able to report on request response times and requires modification to capture response data (rather than close date) for this performance measure.			
Enforcement requests (incidents) Of the 35 requests for enforcement of sustained control pest plant rules, 18 were actioned within 20 working days. Note, the majority of these enforcements were not resolved within 20 days because of the enforcement process compliance window must allow for inspection, serving of the Notice, and then a reasonable period for control work to take place. The increase in enforcement requests noted 2020-2021 was sustained in 2021-2022. Covid-19 restrictions again had a significant impact on this service delivery as enforcement fieldwork was largely put on hold during the initial Omicron outbreak, along with other eradication delivery work that had to be prioritised when normal work resumed, compounding the delays.					
Road and rail five year weed management plans All road and rail authorities have 5 year weed management plans or prioritised annual plans approved and implemented.	Not achieved	Whangarei District Council have a plan in place and due for renewal in 2023. Waka Kotahi, the New Zealand Transport Agency had a plan in place, which has now expired. Discussions have been had with the Kaipara District Council, Far North District Council and New Zealand Rail to progress their lack of compliance with the Regional Pest Management Plan rule.			
During the period disrupted by COVID-19, It has been challenging to achieve meaningful buy-in by the roading authorities into updating/ completing and actioning plans that meet the intent of the Regional Pest Management Plan rules relating to road and rail corridors. However, good progress has recently been made with KiwiRail and NZTA representatives, and the Chair of the Northern Transport alliance (NTA) that is comprised of all of the District Council roading authorities. They are now more aware of the objectives of the plans, however, all of the authorities find resourcing the plans highly challenging. The majority of vegetation management budgets are still focused on safety and maintenance, and there is a lack of certainty around baseline and future funding. All authorities have been asked to provide more detailed costings in the management plans to better quantify the cost of more substantial and proactive control and the shortfall in budget.					

⁵ Good neighbour rules are designed to address the external effects of pests spilling over from land onto adjacent properties.

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Plant retail outlet compliance All known plant outlets in Northland are inspected annually for exclusion, eradication, progressive containment and sustained control species, and species banned under the National Pest Plant Accord.	Achieved in part		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Nurseries inspected	61%	72%	44.9%
Plant retail outlet compliance There was one instance of non-compliance found with needlepoint ivy cultivars of <i>Hedera helix</i> being offered for sale. These were voluntarily removed and destroyed by the seller. One further nursery was asked to control moth plant growing adjacent to the nursery area, and this has been completed. Covid-19 restrictions again had a significant impact on this service delivery as non-essential fieldwork was largely put on hold during higher alert level settings and the subsequent Omicron outbreak, along with other eradication delivery work that had to be prioritised when normal work resumed, compounding the delays. We now have partnerships focused Biosecurity Officer that will be able to prioritise this work and nursery engagement/education in 2022-2023.					
TradeMe Trade Me was monitored through saved searches for species banned from sale and propagation (focussed on higher risk species). Two listings for agapanthus and five listings for banned tradescantia cultivars were reported and removed.					

5.5 Community Partnerships

In addition to the regulatory work undertaken for pest plants, work continues to raise community awareness and understanding of the threat posed by pest plants, and to encourage and remove barriers to community action, though advice and funding support. The cases studies over page highlight the great work achieved by the pest plant focussed groups in three of the Council's High Value Areas, despite a challenging year due to COVID disruptions.

Partnership activity	Details		
Council supported programmes – Biofund Biofunds approved for the community.	Biofunds	2019-20	2020-21
	With pest plant component	10	11
	Total biofunds granted	87	117
Council supported programmes – High Value Areas Summary of the engagement work undertaken by the High Value Area Pest Plant groups.	Community group engagement	2019-20	2020-21
	Volunteer and education events	69	164
	Awareness campaigns / media articles	13	31
	Recorded volunteer hours	4,266	6,505
	Landowner site visits, advice, and materials	164	89
	Social media posts	106	160

CASE STUDIES

Weed Action – Native Habitat Restoration Trust

<https://weedaction.org.nz/whangarei-heads/>

The Weed Action Native Habitat Restoration Trust, (Weed Action) is a community-based organisation focussed on protecting the ecosystems of Whangārei Heads peninsula through protecting and restoring native habitats by removing invasive weeds and preventing the spread. They do this through several channels; Raising awareness in the community, removing barriers to action, supporting and encouraging volunteer action; and building relationships with different agencies and advocating for action and resources. Biosecurity staff assist with advice and funding applications.

Key highlights this year include:

Weed Action's work was highlighted in the Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment's report 'Space invaders: A review of how New Zealand manages weeds that threaten native ecosystems the weed issue our native forests are facing'.

The Action group continues to build a local hapū connection and develop successful funding applications for iwi led initiatives, and to enable the deployment of the Aki Tai Here restoration team members on projects at the Heads. A series of hui were also held to explore hapū aspirations for the restoration of Manaia maunga, and how Weed Action might facilitate this.

An MOU has been developed with Whangarei District Council to support work on their reserves and provide volunteer support.

Successful funding grants and advocacy by Weed Action enabled 904 contract weed control hours to take place in Public Conservation and reserve land. This work would otherwise not have occurred.

Launch of the Whaka Ora Reotahi project, a collaboration between Weed Action and tangata whenua. This project is utilising funding from a successful Lotteries grant to support volunteer action, and to engage the Aki Tai Here team for control work in some of the more inaccessible and densely weedy areas of the maunga.

The third year of the Parua Bay Privet buffer project has been delivered and extended to 38 landowners committed to the project, delivering over 450 hours of in-kind privet control to match contractor hours.

Advocacy continued through roadside signs, Facebook posts, newsletters, mail drops and through initiatives like the moth plant pod disposal bin and community competition, which removed millions of seeds from the Whangārei Heads environment.

Weed Action also supported landowners to access Biofund and providing training and oversight to ensure follow on work continues,

Weed Action Whangārei Heads 21-22	
Volunteer events	62
Engagement initiatives	8
Volunteer members	40
Weed Action groups	8
Landowner support	79
Total volunteer hours	5645



NorthTec students and Aki Tai Here weed team about to head up Mt Manaia with Weed Action



The moth plant pod bin and awareness campaign and competition removed millions of seeds from the Whangārei Heads area

CASE STUDIES



Specialist Weed Assistance Team (S.W.A.T) – Tutukaka

<https://tutukakalandcare.org.nz/plant-pests/>

The Specialist Weed Assistance team or 'S.W.A.T', are a part of the Tutukaka Landcare Coalition, focussed on action to stop the plant pests that are invading the Tutukaka Coast. The team is made up of community volunteers who are waging war on weeds and a project lead who coordinates activities.

It was a challenging year with numerous working bees cancelled due to COVID, however some great weed control work was still achieved. Corporate events added 231 volunteer hours, and local contractors were trained and supported to enable work to be carried out utilising NRC Biofund, targeting large infestations of moth plant and ginger



SWAT Coordinator giving a pre-briefing event briefing before local volunteers get stuck in weeding on the sandspit

Events 2021-2022	
Weed action events	9
Educational events	2
Volunteer members	60+
Landowner support	8
Total volunteer hours	355

Weed Action – Piroa Brynderwyns



<https://weedactionpiroabrynderwyns.org.nz/>

Key achievements this year include:

- Growth in the number of core Weed Action groups, now 14, that are consistently engaged in weed management and restoration at key sites.
- Transformation of the Lang's Beach Reserve through the committed efforts of a core group of volunteers and mailing list of over 150 casual volunteers.
- Successful funding and support requests to Kaipara District Council for local Weed Action groups working in District Council reserves.
- Partnership with DOC to maximise volunteer opportunities and delivery work.

Key awareness activities included the provision of a weed amnesty bin and the development of the Weed Action calendar, which identifies a different local weed problem each month and promotes the work of Weed Action Piroa-Brynderwyn.

Weed action Piroa Brynderwyns 20-21	
Volunteer and education events	5
Engagement initiatives and media	15
Weed Action groups	14
Volunteer members	103
Landowner visits	37
Total volunteer hours	3,542



Volunteers heads down weeding at the Lincoln road reserves

Wilding pines

<https://www.wildingconifers.org.nz/national-programme/>

In 2021- 2022, Northland Regional Council was allocated funding from the National Wilding Conifer Control Programme to eliminate wilding pines in Northland. The programme is also building valuable relationships with Northland's communities and providing local work and training opportunities, whilst helping protect our native biodiversity.

Managed pine plantations are an essential resource in Northland's economy, however the region's unique dune, gumland, and wetland habitats are vulnerable to invasion from wilding pines. The programme is focused on removing pines from these habitats and controlling key seed sources in and around these habitats. A recent science publication on the damaging ecological effects of radiata pine can be found at: <https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s10530-022-02892-6>

Northland wilding pine control 2021-2022	
Jobs created (new starts)	81.5
Hours worked	10,581
Full time equivalent staff (non council)	6
Contractors engaged	4
Wilding pines controlled	74 825
Area controlled (hectares)	11,776
Number of control sites	21

CASE STUDY

Wilding pine control at Pipiwai

Forty-five minutes west of Whangarei in the Pipiwai district, a joint initiative is underway to eliminate wilding pines from unique gumland habitat. This partnership between Northland Regional Council, Te Orewai Te Horo Trust, and MPI through the community partnership fund, is just part of a larger restoration project taking place in the area. The trust is involved in setting up a native plant nursery and is already actively restoring native whenua.

As well as employing local rangitahi, building capacity and protecting taonga species, the programme is increasing the use and opportunities for mātauranga Māori.

Te Orewai Te Horo Trust was the only successful Northland applicant for MPI's 2021- 2022 round of community partnership funding.

The unique biodiversity, flora and fauna on the 1,500ha Block is only now being celebrated and understood, including kiwikiwi, native orchids pollinated by native bats, fern birds, and others.

To date over 5,000 wildings have been removed from steep and remote terrain. With a third of the block still to cover the drill and fill crew expect to be busy killing 1,000s more wilding pines well into 2023.



CASE STUDIES



Te Paki wilding pine control

The 2021- 2022 funding has allowed for the continuation of the wilding pine programme at Te Paki Station, a 2500ha, block owned and managed by Ngāti Kuri just South of Cape Reinga. Te Paki is home to some of Northland's most vulnerable and outstanding landscapes including the giant Te Paki sand dunes and several high priority dune lakes. Wilding pines are a huge threat to dune ecosystems, as they can invade and spread where other weed species cannot, and they significantly alter the habitats they invade. A large wilding pine can take up to 600 litres of water per day out of the environment given the right conditions; this greatly impacts the water table and water availability in these habitats.

Local operators OS Safetree and crew have been undertaking the work at Te Paki. To date the team have poisoned, hand pulled, or

felled to waste over 25,000 wilding pines from the dunes, gum land and native bush at Te Paki.

The Ngāti Kuri Trust Board who manage Te Paki station have a restoration plan focused on returning the whenua to as a natural state as they can. This involves removing wilding pines and other weed species, pest control, fencing wetlands lakes and native areas and replanting using locally seed sourced plants that were once numerous in this area. The National Wilding Pine Control Programme funding has allowed for a major acceleration in the control of one of the main weed threats, and a major reduction in seed source, which will greatly slow reinvasion and further spread.



**PREVENT
THE SPREAD**

5.6 Community Engagement

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Community engagement - events Total number of engagement events conducted to increase awareness of plant pests is maintained, or greater than the previous year.	Not achieved		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Field Days / A&P Shows	5	1	0
		Community events	4	1	1
		School visits	2	0	0
		Stakeholder activities	14	13	15
		Pest workshops	5	8	3
			30	23	18
		Refer Appendix for more details			
As for 2020, 2021, a number of the large-scale community events the Pest Plant team would normally attend or host were cancelled because of Covid-19 restrictions and alert level uncertainty. The annual weed workshops were also postponed to July 2022 to align with Biosecurity week, so figures include those events from the 2021 year that were in the 2021-2022 reporting period.					



6. Pest Animals

Riha rawaho



2,865

Customer
requests



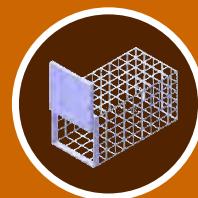
7,345

hectares of
new CPCAs



88

Biofund projects



416 since 2017

Kiwi numbers have
gone from
80 → 1,130
in Whangārei Heads



Since 2002

210

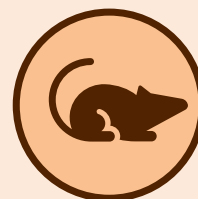
Kiwi Coast
Community Groups
actively managing



241,000 ha

591,584

pests gone from
the Kiwi Coast



since 2013

62,018

pests trapped in
High Value Areas



6,585

Traps issued



45

Event activities



Exclusion animals

Key points of the exclusion programme

- Prevention of seven pest animal species establishing populations in Northland.
- Council and Crown agencies are responsible for control.
- Success is related to fast and efficient response planning and action in the field.
-

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Engagement events attended is maintained or greater than the previous year	Not Achieved	Field Days / A&P Shows	2019-20 5	2020-21 1	2021-22 0
Rainbow lorikeet incursion Confirmation of a Rainbow lorikeet population located in the Brynderwyn-Mangawhai area prompted Ministry for Primary Industries to launch an eradication response during 20/21. Ministry for Primary Industries is now in the process of engaging a specialist contractor to undertake surveillance of the northland population with the aim of formulating an eradication plan. Auckland Council and Northland Regional staff will collaborate with Ministry for Primary Industries to ensure a successful eradication. There have been two other unrelated reports of Rainbow lorikeets, both of which have been resolved.					
Wallaby Two reports of a single wallaby in two separate incidences were responded to in south Hokianga however searches conducted at the time could not confirm the sightings and no further reports have been received. The response was limited to surveillance.					
Big headed ant Two incidents were reported during the year, but all were found to be different species and not Big headed ant. No further response was initiated					
Identify new sites New incursion sites of exclusion animals are identified.	Achieved	Incident reports	2019-20 18	2020-21 8	2021-22 4
Incident investigation and response <ul style="list-style-type: none">Initial investigations for all reports undertaken within 5 working days.Response plans developed and implemented within 20 working days	Achieved	All exclusion pest animal investigations were undertaken within five days and where relevant response plans implemented within 20 working days. The rainbow lorikeet incursion is being led out by MPI under their plan.			

Eradication animals

Feral deer have the potential to establish throughout the region and can cause adverse effects to the environmental, economic, social, or cultural values of the region. Council is either the lead agency or a partner in their eradication. Eradication will be undertaken by the council in conjunction with relevant Crown agencies, tangata whenua, and other stakeholders where practicable.

Regulatory programmes include:

- Enforcement of rules relating to eradication animals.
- Eradication of species listed within the eradication programme.

Non-regulatory services include:

- Support eradications undertaken by other Crown agencies, tangata whenua, and other stakeholders
- Provide advice about how to manage eradication animals
- Support, attend and provide public pest control workshops to raise awareness. •Manage contractors relating to control of eradication animals.

There are currently three species of deer known to be present in Northland, red deer (*Cervus elaphus scoticus*), fallow deer (*Dama dama*), and sika deer (*Cervus nippon*) and wapiti- red hybrid which

have arisen from past farm escapes. Red deer and fallow deer are farmed, and sika deer are present in one area of Northland as a result of illegal releases.

Programme objectives

The goals of Northland Wild Deer Response Programme 2016-2025 (a collaboration of stakeholders including the Department of Conservation, OSPRI¹¹, and Northland Regional Council) has two broad goals:

- To eradicate low densities of wild deer in Northland through deer farmer liaison, fence inspections, surveillance, wild deer response activities and statutory management; and prevent the successful establishment of wild deer populations.
- To increase community awareness of the risks and environmental consequences of feral deer establishing in Northland to gain wide community support for the vision of no feral populations of deer in Northland.

Programme aims

Council will work cooperatively with the Department of Conservation and other stakeholders to achieve the objectives of the Northland Wild Deer Response Plan 2016-2025. Landowners, occupiers, and the public understand the risks and environmental consequences of feral deer establishing in Northland and are supportive of the programme.

Progress in achieving aims

Performance Measure	Result	Details
Any faults in deer farm fences observed via field inspections that pose a risk of deer escaping are reported to the Department of Conservation within 24 hours for remedial action	Achieved	13 Farms had their biannual fence inspections with four failing. Three have been reinspected and passed. The fourth is in discussions with DOC with a recommendation to destock the farm and remove altogether the risk of further deer escapes.

¹¹ OSPRI is a partnership between primary industries and the government that manages two national programmes – NAIT and TBfree. NAIT provides the National Animal Identification and Traceability system and TBfree aims to eradicate bovine tuberculosis from New Zealand.

There were 18 reported deer sightings in the 2021-22 period with the highest number of reports in April during the roar when stags are roaming, and sightings are more common. The stags typically turn up around the permitted deer farms and open pastures leading to an increase in public sightings.

Reporting Month	Animal	Total
Jul-2021	1	1
Aug-2021	2	2
Nov-2021	1	1
Dec-2021	2	2
Jan-2022	2	2
Mar-2022	2	2
Apr-2022	7	7
May-2022	1	1
Total	18	18



Performance Measure	Result	Details
Known deer populations are surveyed and mapped across Northland.	Achieved	A map of deer reports in 2021-2022 and known deer management sites in Northland is shown overleaf.
Attempt to resolve legal and accountability issues regarding feral deer in Northland.	Achieved	NRC and DOC are working together to resolve the issues and a new process for entry onto private land in accordance with the legislation is being developed. NRC Biosecurity staff have worked with DOC staff on establishing a set of protocols for regulating permitted deer farms and managing deer escapes in Northland.
100% of deer incidents are responded to within 48 hours.	Achieved	
Any faults in deer farm fences observed via field inspections that pose a risk of deer escaping are reported to the Department of Conservation within 24 hours for remedial action.	Achieved	





Above: Current active (red) and historic (green) deer management sites in 2021-2022.

Sustained control animals

Biodiversity restoration projects controlling sustained control pest animals are generally managed through council's Biosecurity partnership programmes. These include:

- **Community Pest Control Areas (CPCA)**
A way of assisting communities to manage pests on private land.
- **High Value Areas (HVA)**
Specifically identified areas of high biodiversity and/or cultural, recreational or economic value where the community lead and undertake pest control
- **Biofund (Environment Fund)**
Small management agreements and grant funding to establish pest control projects.
- **Predator Free 2050 projects**
These are large scale predator eradication and control projects that have been established in Northland in partnership with community, iwi and hapū, and other agencies.
- **Biosecurity Partnerships**
Such as the Northland Regional Council – Kiwi Coast Trust Partnership to support and enable coordination of community pest control across Northland.

Council uses regulatory measures when required (rules differ for each animal), such as not holding mustelids in captivity.

Progress in achieving aims

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Land area in CPCAs Increase in land under CPCA protection by 5,000 ha per annum.	Achieved				
		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	
		New CPCAs (ha)	10,107	5,732	7,345
New and pre-existing CPCAs are shown in the map overleaf.					
New CPCAs initiated during the year were:					
CPCA Name		Area (ha)			
Pest Free Mangapai		2,735			
Pest Free Peninsulas Hukatere		2,124			
Opara-Wharekawa Kiwi Protection		1,686			
Te Tangi o Te Ata		800			
Total area new CPCAs (ha)		7,345			
Response to reports from public Reports on sustained control pests will be responded to within 20 working days.	Response time data not available				
		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	
		Requests received	4,263	4,149	2,865

CASE STUDIES



Kiwi Coast Partnership – Northland Regional Council



<https://kiwicoast.org.nz>

In 2022 council re-signed a new 5-year partnership agreement with the Kiwi Coast Trust consolidating its strong working relationship which began formally in 2017 (include image of re-signing here). Working together, they are ensuring gains made to date are not lost and momentum continues. Working in unity also allows both Kiwi Coast and council to leverage further potential funding and show a strategically coordinated regional approach to community conservation.

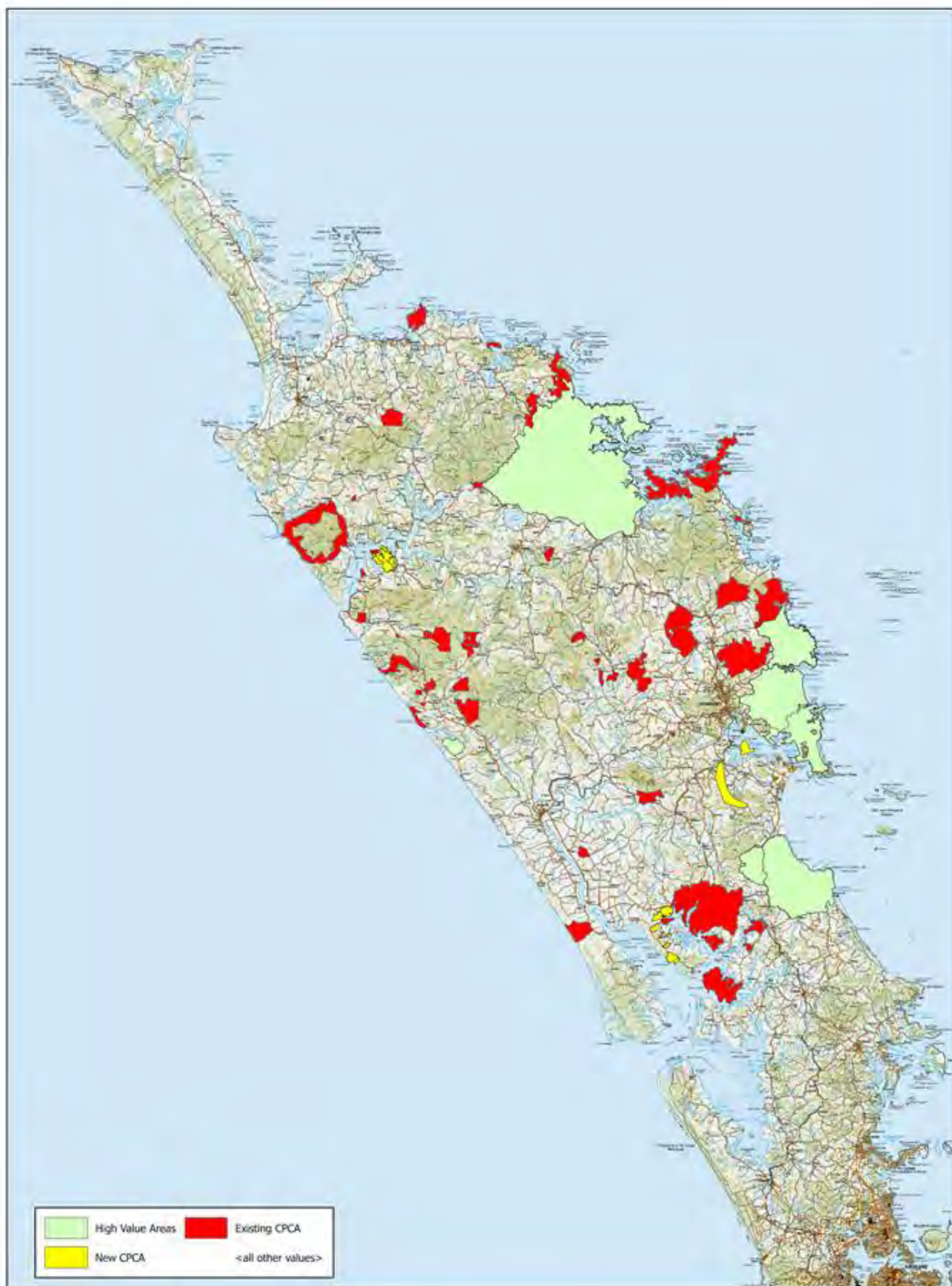
Despite Covid hampering the 'start-up' meeting of a few new community projects, the momentum of Kiwi Coast did not slow and the work of the many projects involved did not stop! Over the past year, a further 23 projects linked into Kiwi Coast, taking the total involved in the collaborative initiative to **210**. The collective area managed by these groups and projects increased from 225,000ha in 2021, to **241,000 ha** in 2022. Monitoring results continue to demonstrate the strength of Kiwi Coast's collaborative approach. Collated trap catch data shows that **591,584** animal pests were trapped by groups and projects

involved in the Kiwi Coast over the last nine years. On average, **1,900** animal pests were trapped on the Kiwi Coast every week in the 2021 calendar year, up from 1,800 per week the previous year. These results not only demonstrate the sheer hard work and scale of effort, but also generate a sense of pride and mana in the work being done and the results achieved. It helps to show that individually, groups are achieving great results, but together they are achieving something truly phenomenal. The Kiwi Coast also supported and assisted projects to carry out pest control operations aimed at reducing trap-wise predators through the use of toxins with secondary poisoning effects. In line with the Kiwi Coast Strategic Plan (2017) Kiwi Coast supported predator control in key areas to link distinct projects and create continuous trapping networks across the landscape that boost kiwi survival and allow their safe dispersal into new areas. A new working relationship with the NRC Predator Free team led to additional Kiwi Coast support to help coordinate and boost the 60,000ha predator control zone in eastern Whangarei and amplify the Pest Free Purerua Project.

Community events since 2013

Skill building workshops	98
Kiwi event participants	19,268

Kiwi Coast Statistics (calendar year)	2017	2018	2019	2020	2021
Groups working to save kiwi	120	129	159	187	210
Land in active pest management (ha)	146,800	155,000	198,000	224,760	241,000
Animal pests gone (since 2013)	229,372	297,753	396,634	492,458	591,584



Performance Measure	Result	Details																																																							
Council supported programmes – High Value Areas Number of traps issued, and number of pests trapped	Achieved	Over 6000 traps were issued to landowners and community groups in 2021-22; lower than previous years due to limited community group interactions and supply chain disruptions as a result of covid-19. Pests trapped and removed from the environment continue to increase as outlined below:																																																							
<table><tr><th rowspan="2">High Value Area outputs</th><th colspan="3">Mustelids trapped</th><th colspan="3">Total pests trapped</th></tr><tr><th>2019-20</th><th>2020-21</th><th>2021-22</th><th>2019-20</th><th>2020-21</th><th>2021-22</th></tr><tr><td>Mid-North</td><td>518</td><td>655</td><td>807</td><td>47,495</td><td>40,210</td><td>43,786</td></tr><tr><td>Tutukākā</td><td>142</td><td>49</td><td>195</td><td>2,812</td><td>2,027</td><td>3,788</td></tr><tr><td>Whangārei Heads</td><td>45</td><td>38</td><td>48</td><td>865</td><td>947</td><td>1,184</td></tr><tr><td>Piroa-Brynderwyn</td><td>226</td><td>271</td><td>252</td><td>2,917</td><td>3,497</td><td>3,751</td></tr><tr><td>KiwiLink</td><td></td><td></td><td>152</td><td></td><td></td><td>9,509</td></tr><tr><td>Total</td><td>931</td><td>1,013</td><td>1,454</td><td>54,669</td><td>46,681</td><td>62,018</td></tr></table>			High Value Area outputs	Mustelids trapped			Total pests trapped			2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	Mid-North	518	655	807	47,495	40,210	43,786	Tutukākā	142	49	195	2,812	2,027	3,788	Whangārei Heads	45	38	48	865	947	1,184	Piroa-Brynderwyn	226	271	252	2,917	3,497	3,751	KiwiLink			152			9,509	Total	931	1,013	1,454	54,669	46,681	62,018
High Value Area outputs	Mustelids trapped			Total pests trapped																																																					
	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22																																																			
Mid-North	518	655	807	47,495	40,210	43,786																																																			
Tutukākā	142	49	195	2,812	2,027	3,788																																																			
Whangārei Heads	45	38	48	865	947	1,184																																																			
Piroa-Brynderwyn	226	271	252	2,917	3,497	3,751																																																			
KiwiLink			152			9,509																																																			
Total	931	1,013	1,454	54,669	46,681	62,018																																																			
Council supported programmes – Biofund Number of new Biofund grants approved.	Achieved	<table><tr><th></th><th>2019-20</th><th>2020-21</th><th>2021-22</th></tr><tr><td>Biofund projects</td><td>87</td><td>117</td><td>88</td></tr></table>		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	Biofund projects	87	117	88																																															
	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22																																																						
Biofund projects	87	117	88																																																						
There was a reduction in new Biofunds with 88 supported in 2021-2022 compared with 117 projects the previous year. This largely reflects the reduction in community pest education and awareness events held by council staff due to ongoing Covid-19 pandemic limitations and was not an unexpected result. A map of Northland showing the location of the 2021-2022 Biofund projects is shown overleaf. These are described as 2021-2024 due to the majority being 3 years in duration.																																																									

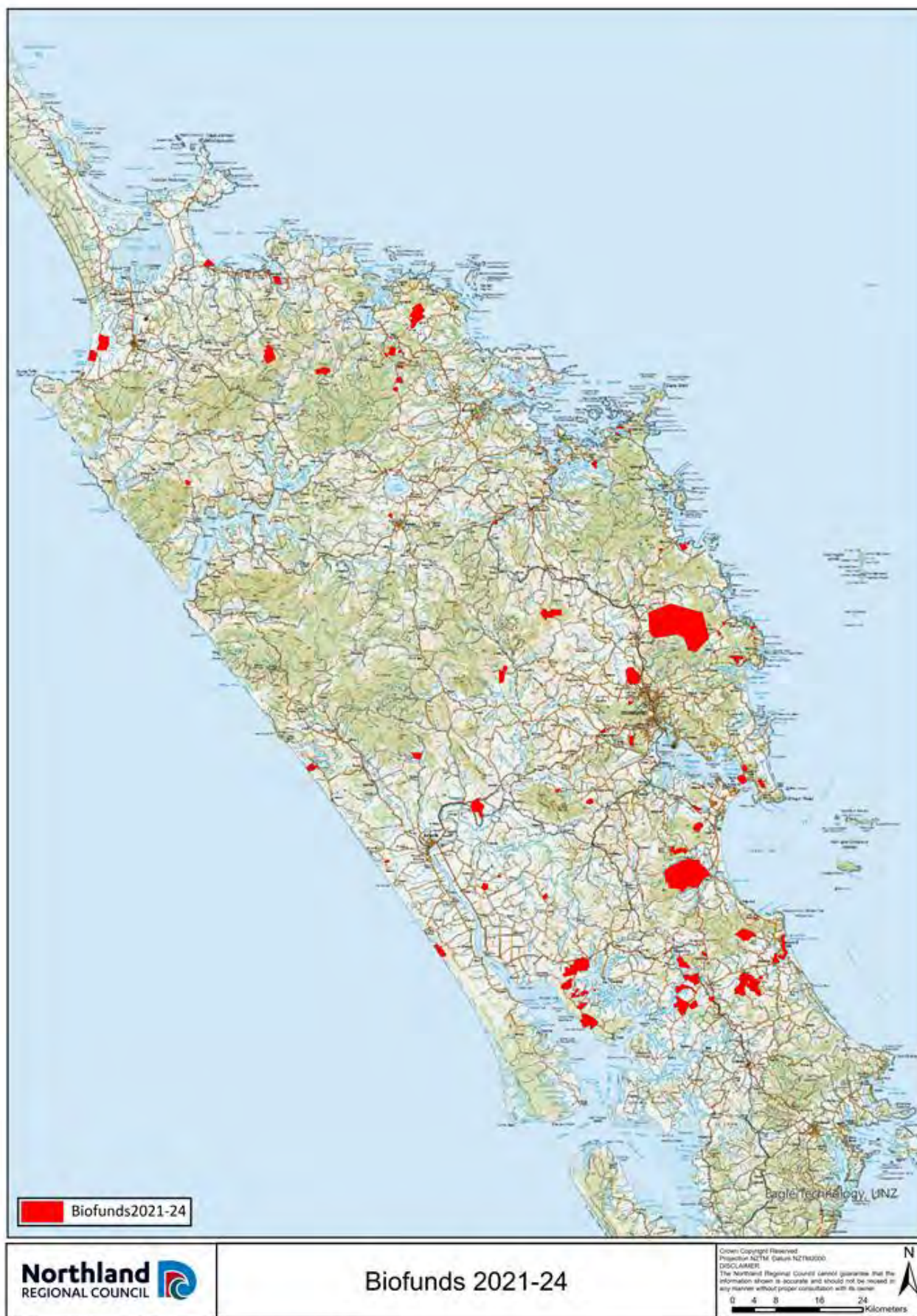
BIOFUND

2021 - 2022

88 community projects were granted funding for pest control

Right: Installing traps secured through a Biofund grant with Te Orewai Te Horo Trust.





Performance Measure	Result	Details
<p>Possum Index Monitoring</p> <p>Contractors specifically engaged by council for possum control will meet a target of 5% residual possum densities in council led operations. Council supported programmes undertaking possum control are achieving agreed targets set in community pest control area agreements.</p>	Achieved	<p><i>Baseline establishment of a new performance measure 2021-2022.</i></p> <p>There were no NRC funded performance-based contracts for possum knockdowns in 2021 - 22. Possum monitoring has been completed in some of the projects where sustained possum control is being carried out, using either the Residual Trap Catch (RTC) or the Waxtag Index (WTI) method:</p> <p>Native Forest Restoration Trust and Waipoua Forest Trust CPCA's completed possum monitoring in their adjacent reserves using the 3-night RTC method. Ten lines were randomly placed, and the result was 1.7% indicating their possum control is very effective. These results were also backed up by field observations of very little possum sign/browse and old scratch trees having healed up.</p> <p>Te Toa Whenua CPCA completed a 7-day wax tag post monitor in May 2022 following three bait station fills and top-ups between September 2021 - April 2022 with cyanide and one pulse of double tap in selected areas. The result of the wax tag monitor was 33% WTI. Although not directly comparable, this likely equates to around 10% RTC. Contractors noted that some of the random line placements were in weed and pine plantation buffer areas and suggest that future monitoring lines should only be in the native forest to avoid monitoring results being skewed by higher possum numbers in buffer areas.</p> <p>A pre and post 7-day WTI monitor was completed at Taharoa Domain to assess the effectiveness of a toxin operation in this area. Due to Covid disruptions, the bait was put out later than in previous years, however a 7-day wax tag post monitor was carried out prior to Christmas and returned a result of 23%, While slightly above the aim of 20% or less, this was still a good result. The results between years show that possum population numbers quickly recover (and grow) after an operation is completed due to rapid reinvasion from surrounding areas. Annual operations only achieve a short-term gain in possum population reduction and until there is pest control occurring on private land around the lakes there will be limits to what level of control can be achieved and maintained in the domain.</p> <p>No monitoring was completed at Maunganui Bluff CPCA as planned due to Covid disruptions.</p>

CASE STUDY

Enviroschools

The Enviroschools Project Pest Control Programme continues to be a huge success, opening-up real opportunities for students including educational qualifications (NCEA credits), career pathways and the very real potential to make a living from possum fur. While covid-19 disruptions led to fewer project pest control events taking place, the team was still able to attend four events and, overall, 91 Enviroschools students achieved NCEA credits in the last year.

The programme started with Project Possum in 2011 and evolved to include Project Mustelid in 2016 and Project Rodent in 2017. The three initiatives were combined into Project Pest Control the following year and now enjoy considerable success in the battle against pests.

Northland Regional Council (NRC) leads the theory and in-field based programme, supported by Can Train NZ and local industry. Students learn about the biology and impact of animal pests and

Enviroschool students with NCEA credit	
2019 - 2020	146
2020-2021	121
2021-2022	91
Since 2011	1068



Above and right: Biosecurity staff teaching trapping skills to students.

are shown how to trap and kill them humanely, and how to skin possums and machine and hand pluck their fur.

As part of the best practice learning during the two-day skills course, tutors start with the life of the pests, establishing the creatures as living, breathing animals deserving of our respect and humane treatment.

Humane leg-hold traps are used to trap possums, and the students are taught how to place them and set them to cause the least discomfort to the animal while also placing the trap beyond the reach of Kiwi.

After a few weeks, to allow for pest control practice and completion of theory work, an assessment day is held. At this workshop, students are put through their paces and investigate a variety of biosecurity career pathways.



High Value Areas

The inspirational work of Northland communities across our High Value Area (HVA) programmes continued throughout 2021-2022 despite the cancellation of many events and education opportunities due to Covid-19 restrictions. Highlights from community groups with a weed focus have been described in the previous Pest Plants section, and here we showcase some of the stand out achievements made in pest animal management over the past year. Kiwi monitoring, pāteke flock count surveys and targeted five minute bird counts for eight key native bird species (tui, kingfisher/kōtare, waxeye/ riroriro, kukupa, tomtit/miromiro, fantail/pīwakawaka, kākā and bellbird/korimako) were able to be conducted across many of these large landscape-scale projects with promising results showing the dividends of sustained animal pest management. The Department of Conservation's analysis of the 2022 annual pāteke flock count data confirmed that pāteke (the rarest mainland duck in New Zealand) are still flourishing in eastern Northland, particularly at sites with sustained and intensive predator control. However, numbers have fallen with 595 counted in 2022, down from 661 in 2021, and 704 in 2020, most likely because of successive summer droughts.

Tutukākā and Whangārei Heads

The Tutukākā and Whangārei Heads projects are two of Northland's longest running HVA's with a foundation built on twenty years of successful pest control and kiwi recovery work. Kiwi releases are usually a highlight of the year in both these areas; however, due to covid restrictions no kiwi releases were able to take place during 2021-2022. Despite the limited community engagement, these HVAs continued to deliver outstanding pest animal and weed management and kiwi populations continue to increase (see case study below on Backyard Kiwi). Kākā also continue to be seen regularly at Tutukākā – with groups of up to six at a time, often squawking and whistling loudly. The increased presence of kākā, most likely visiting from offshore islands, may indicate the habitat is more favourable for them to nest and breed on the mainland.



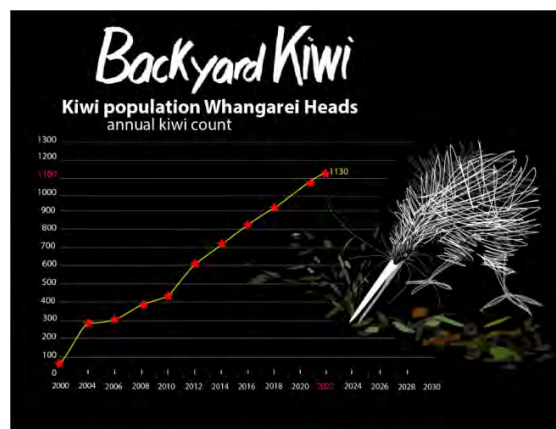
A special kākā sighting in Sandy Bay, an area where kākā sightings are extremely rare

CASE STUDY

Backyard Kiwi successes continue in the Whangārei Heads HVA

<http://www.backyardkiwi.org.nz/>

Twenty-two years of successful kiwi recovery work has seen the Whangārei Heads kiwi population increase from approximately 80 kiwi in 2001 to an estimated 1130 in 2022, up from last year's 1090. This kiwi population is also now expanding northwards into the Kiwi Link High Value Area programme range making Backyard Kiwi one of the most successful kiwi recovery projects in New Zealand. This is a measure of the effectiveness of the Kiwi Recovery work being conducted by our communities across Whangārei Heads. What a fantastic community effort – particularly the crucial good dog control and the rate payer funding!



The results show that good stoat control, through quality trapping and toxin pulses, is leading to good kiwi chick survival and that responsible dog control by the majority of our community is paying dividends.

Kiwi Link

The Kiwi Link project is the most recent HVA, covering 15,000 hectares collectively and managed by 11 self-driven community groups. These groups work together to protect and restore native biodiversity between Taraunui and Ngunguru Ford in eastern Whangārei. This HVA is named the 'Kiwi Link', as the primary goal is to rebuild kiwi populations and connect the kiwi strongholds of the Whangārei Heads peninsula and the Tutukākā Coast. In addition, the groups involved in Kiwi Link continued with plant pest control, targeting the most pervasive weeds as a priority.

During 2021-2022, Kiwi Link groups and projects trapped 9,509 animal pests with 36,958 pests having been trapped since 2017 and contributed a significant amount of pest plant volunteer labour. Kiwi monitoring showed that kiwi are increasing within the project area, with a record number of kiwi calls recorded at the Manulife Whānui site. Kiwi are also now present at new sites where previously they were unable to be detected. For example, the first kiwi call in decades was recorded by Glenbervie Landcare in 2022. In addition, Kiwi Coast has worked each year with community groups, specialist staff at DOC, the Pāteke Recovery Group and NorthTec to assist with the flock counts and investigate new sites in the Kiwi Link area.

The latest Five-Minute bird count data also indicate that other key native bird species are increasing across the Kiwi Link HVA.

Increased observations of kākā have also been received during the year from Kohinui, Owhiwa, Mt Tiger and Harris Road landowners. These results can be attributed to the ongoing hard work carried out by the many local landowners and land managers involved. The achievements of the Kiwi Link HVA will also be resulting in a beneficial 'halo' effect for the adjoining Whangārei Heads and Tutukākā biodiversity strongholds. Less pests are re-invading these areas and native wildlife will be spilling into them.



"Chookie" the monitored kiwi and his two kiwi chicks, December 2021. Photo: Todd Hamilton

Piroa-Brynderwyn

New Trust formation for Piroa Brynderwyn HVA and mana enhancement agreement with iwi/hapū

Iwi, hapū, landowners and community members have been working together collectively for over 5 years building on more than 30 years of community-led conservation in the Piroa Brynderwyn area. As the Piroa Brynderwyn HVA steering group has grown in scale and breadth, there was recognition that sustainability would be made more certain by forming a charitable trust and in mid-2022 the Piroa Conservation Trust was formed. The Trust has a Mana Enhancing Agreement (MEA) to work in partnership with Te Uri o Hau and Patuharakeke, along with the operational delivery team of PBL.

A highlight of the year saw a large team from the Royal New Zealand Air Force arriving in Mangawhai to join the volunteers of Piroa-Brynderwyns Landcare for a week's work progressing important conservation efforts that benefit the local community. The team worked with the infamous local 'trackies', who are well known in the area, to 'cut in' a new section of a walking trail that will potentially be incorporated into the Te Araroa Trail which passes over Waorahi Conservation Estate and install a bait station network in the adjoining Department of Conservation Reserve. The track work has opened an important alternative route to the public, moving walkers off the public road to fully enjoy the wonderful coastal landscape of the area via a connected network of tracks.



Volunteers set up camp in preparation for a week's conservation work in the Piroa Brynderwyn area.

Mid North

A total of 43,472 animal pests were removed from the Mid North HVA which covers approximately 40,000 hectares of pest control area, up by more than 3000 from the previous year. This included 16,758 possums, 15,100 rats, 581 stoats, 225 weasels and 751 feral cats. Additionally, a small number of skill-building trapping workshops and field days were still able to be held, despite restrictions, including the Mid North professional trapper field trip.

In February 2022, the Mid-North HVA once again assisted DOC to carry out the annual pāteke flock count survey, with Matakā station, with the Landing and NZ Corrections participating. While Mid North flock counts were slightly reduced this year because of the summer drought, it was pleasing to have reports of dispersed pāteke at Pakaraka, South Kerikeri Inlet, Matakā Station, Moturoa Island and NZ Corrections at Ngāwha.

Another exciting project within the Mid-North HVA, the 'Pest Free Purerua Peninsula' project, successfully completed its second year of operation. The Purerua Peninsula covers 7,600ha on the northern reaches of the Bay of Islands and is home to around 25% of Northland's kiwi population. The Pest Free Purerua project (<https://pfp.kiwi>), boosts existing pest control through a successful grant through Kiwis for Kiwi from DOC's Jobs for Nature

Funding. New trapping and monitoring techniques were added during the past year including nodes on live capture traps, mayo lures with cameras and double-sided live capture traps.



The winner of the inaugural Kiwi Coast 'Outstanding Group of Project Award' was Bay Bush Action Project for a truly outstanding, community led project with proven results in forest health regeneration and steadily increasing kiwi populations in the Mid-North.



Mid-North_Pest Free Purerua, Mataka Station. Photo: Dean Wright.

Western Northland

Momentum continues to build in Western Northland

Three new CPCA's were started in Western Northland during 2021-2022:

- **Native Forest Restoration Trust (NFRT)** have four prominent reserves in Western Northland which all adjoin the Waipoua Forest Conservation Park: Professor W.R. McGregor Reserve (343ha), Elvie McGregor Reserve (141ha); Wekaweka Reserve (120ha) and Cynthia Hewitt Reserve (152 ha). This CPCA with NFRT will focus on establishing a kiwi protection area at Cynthia Hewitt Reserve (supported by surrounding forestry blocks) as well as provide funding for maintaining possum and rat control at the three other reserves.
- **The Waipoua Forest Trust** occupies 265ha of previously cleared land set aside for native regeneration. This land is made up of three reserves which border the northern and southern edges of the Waipoua Forest. The Waipoua Forest Trust is committed to restoring the natural balance of the forest ecosystem by replanting natives and controlling plant and animal pests. This CPCA has a particular focus on weed control.
- **The Opara-Wharekawa peninsula** is home to a remnant population of Northland brown kiwi, one of the last functioning kiwi populations on the Hokianga harbour. Mustelid trapping has been occurring at the end of the peninsula by the residents of the Opara Ecological Estate subdivision and this has provided important protection to kiwi within that area. However, kiwi are also present outside of the subdivision area and residents of the wider Opara-Wharekawa peninsula are passionate about establishing a trapping network and maintaining good dog control so that kiwi are protected across the landscape so that their numbers can increase.

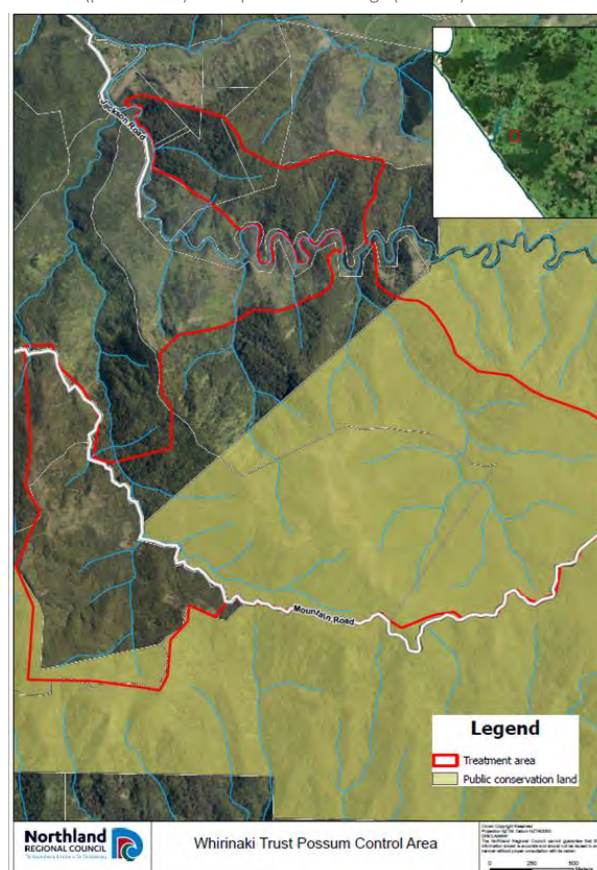
Expansion of Te Toa Whenua Possum control

In mid-2021 Te Roroa were successful at getting Kaimahi for Nature funding (complemented by Tiakina Nga Manu funding) to expand ground-based sustained possum control over a further 1200 hectares of native forest both within public conservation lands and within Te Roroa Whatu Ora Trust land. NRC supported this by funding the toxin required in the expanded area and equipment to set up bait stations on private land. The 1200ha extension connects Te Toa Whenua CPCA with other NRC funded CPCA's that are also doing sustained possum control (Native Forest Restoration Trust, Waipoua Forest Trust and Maunganui Bluff) creating a combined area of over 4,000ha. Much of this extended bait station network has now been established and is

being operated in conjunction with the original Te Toa Whenua CPCA area.

Whirinaki Toiora Trust

Whirinaki Trust successfully secured Jobs for Nature funding for their Mahi A Tengtenga project to support the ecological restoration of the Whirinaki awa by carrying out long-term eradication of pest plants and sustained control of pest animals as well as water quality monitoring. Additional funding from NRC contributed pest control products that has complemented the work they are doing where funding shortfalls occurred. Specifically, through Western Northland funding, NRC funded equipment to enable five kaimahi to conduct possum control using leghold traps and toxins across the treatment area. The team are trapping all major ridges, spurs and all local known internal track systems using Victor No. 1 leghold traps followed up with systematic laying of cyanide baits in either romark bait stations (paste form) or disposable bait bags (feratox).



Kaitiaki Kiwi Waipoua trapping

Kaitiaki Kiwi Waipoua Inc. have a mustelid trapping network that covers approximately 8000ha of Māori-owned, private and public conservation land. This trapping network overlaps with the project areas of Te Toa Whenua, Waipoua Forest Trust and Native Forest Restoration Trust CPCA's which is indicative of the collaborative nature of the group. In 2021-22 they caught 105 stoats, 16 weasels and one ferret (plus over 1500 rats!). NRC funded baseline monitoring in 2021/2022 using kiwi listening devices at five locations on different traplines in the forest where

no listening had previously been carried out. This has provided the group with some good information and confirmed that kiwi numbers are higher deeper in the bush within their trapping network with very low numbers in the bush closer to the Waipoua River. Kaitiaki Kiwi have also strongly supported a DOC-led aerial toxin operation as it will not only provide overall forest health outcomes but also remove any trap-shy stoats through secondary poisoning which will lead to an increase in kiwi recruitment.

Waipoua HVA discussions

There are now currently seven CPCA's that are operating in the general Waipoua area. (Refer to image/map overleaf)

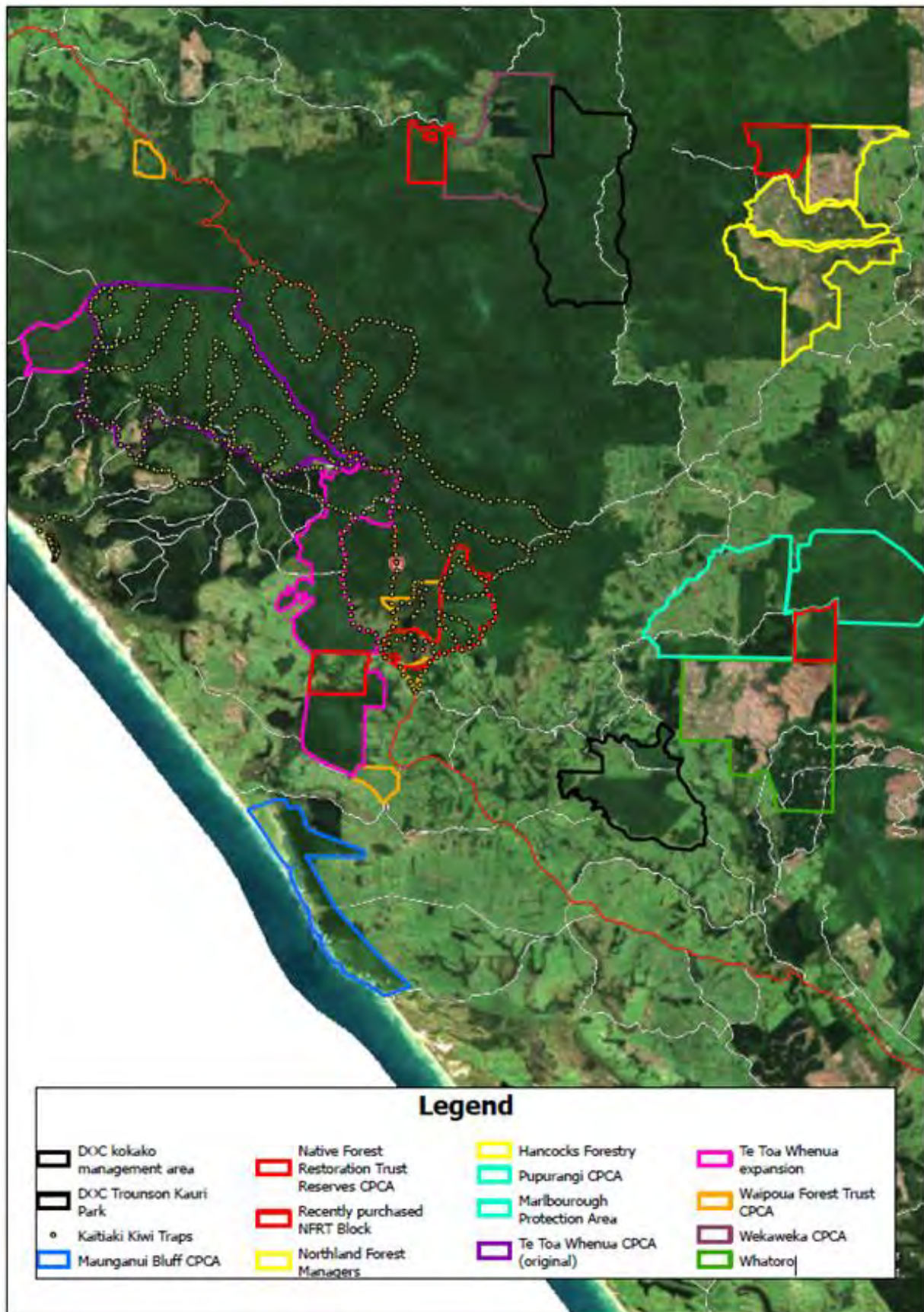
- Kaitiaki Kiwi CPCA
- Maunganui Bluff CPCA
- Te Toa Whenua CPCA
- Pupurangi CPCA
- Wekaweka CPCA
- Native Forest Restoration Trust (NFRT) CPCA
- Waipoua Forest Trust (WFT) CPCA

The focus of these CPCA's is largely stoat and cat control for kiwi protection (Kaitiaki Kiwi, Pupurangi, Wekaweka), possum (and rat) control for forest health improvement (Te Toa Whenua, Maunganui Bluff, Pupurangi, Native Forest Restoration Trust, Waipoua Forest Trust, Wekaweka) and weed control in the upper Waipoua River catchment (WFT plus Te Toa Whenua also have

external funding for weed control in the lower catchment). As well as the CPCA's there are also significant areas on public conservation land under intensive management by the Department of Conservation for kokako protection and this all creates a relatively impressive network of pest control projects. Discussions around formalising an HVA around the Waipoua area have started with Te Roroa and the groups that have CPCA's with NRC in the wider area as well as other key stakeholders that are also doing pest control work (e.g. DOC, Forestry) or have aspirations for increased pest control (e.g. Waimamaku community). An HVA will consolidate the strong collaborations between these projects in this area and support further pest management projects in Western Northland.



Courtney Davis (Te Toa Whenua project coordinator) filling a bait station with feratex on one of the Te Toa Whenua bait station lines.



Above: Current active (red) and historic (green) deer management sites in 2021-2022.

Tiakina Whangarei

Tiakina Whangārei is a community-led urban initiative helping people connect with their environment through conservation activities, while supporting existing mahi, to protect and enhance Whangārei's native biodiversity.

Despite Covid-19 disruptions, the project still saw more traps being deployed within the community, an increased online following, and the start of mahi within the Parihaka reserves, which is supported through Whangārei District Council Long Term Plan funding.

In addition, a new 'predator free' community group, Predator Free Parihaka, was established and the Predator Free Onerahi group continues to increase the amount of pest control in that community. In May, a successful teachers' professional development workshop was held where teachers from eight Whangārei-based and eight wider Northland-based schools/ECEs were introduced to the pest management principles and practices.

Social media outreach	
Page visits	1,588
Post reach	94,788
New page "likes"	367
Total page "likes"	1,029

Tiakina Whangārei engagement	
Public events	6
Facebook posts per month	4+
Print articles	4
Tiakina newsletters	2
Urban schools engaged	10

Tiakina Whangārei Trap NZ data	
Traps distributed	368
TrapNZ registrations	385
Traps uploaded to Trap NZ	145
Pests removed	767



Several surveys were also conducted during the year including:

- Predator surveys: In partnership with NorthTec, a Department of Conservation one night tracking tunnel survey was conducted to detect and estimate the relative abundance of rodents across 17 urban and forest sites in September-October. Rodent detections and abundance were generally high in areas containing suitable habitat and no pest management; however, where management is in place, low rat abundance was observed.
- Urban bird surveys: With support from Birds New Zealand, bird surveys were conducted across the city and adjacent forest fragments in June. Generally, exotic birds dominate urban bird communities while native species are more common in the forested sites. At forest-urban boundaries, the distribution of natives to exotics was more even, indicating that pest control in these areas may result in greater visitation rates of natives to urban areas.

Below: Urban communities doing their bit for conservation across Whangārei.



Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Community engagement – events and activities Total number of engagement events and other social media interactions is maintained or is greater than the previous year.	Not achieved	Refer Appendix for more details	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Field Days / A&P Shows	5	2	0
		Community events	10	4	18
		School visits and workshops	9	8	0
		Enviroschools workshops	7	7	4
		Pest workshops and contractor training	27	28	7
		Kiwi releases and activities	15	10	0
		Controlled substances licence courses	7	5	4
		Total	80	64	33
		A number of engagement activities the pest animal’s team would normally attend, or host, were cancelled because of Covid-19 restrictions and alert level uncertainty.			

Predator Free Whangārei

Ka rere te kūkupa e kawē ana ngā kākano mō āpōpō

Tihei wa mauri ora ki te wheiao ki te ao mārama

The possum eradication project in Whangārei Heads, part of Predator Free Whangārei, is one of only twenty large landscape scale projects happening around Aotearoa New Zealand. The goal is to have over 9,000 hectares of the peninsula free of possums by 2025. This project builds on decades of successful conservation efforts by existing community groups, such as Backyard Kiwi, Bream Head Conservation Trust and the many landcare groups that are part of Whangārei Heads Landcare Forum.

After the challenges of COVID-19, and time needed over the first two years to build a capable team, in April this year the project achieved a milestone by going 'live' with the eradication devices from Bream Head / Te Whara and the Taurikura Ridge area. This means the traps are active and bait stations are filled with toxins. The project now has five full-time field staff, a technical lead, a tikanga field advisor, a communications co-ordinator, and a project manager. Some of the achievements to date include:

Landowner Agreements – Yes	Landowner Agreement – no	Hectares with Landowner Agreements	Bait stations set live	Traps set live	Trail cameras set active	Hectares live with devices
203	4	4,515	255	242	88	1,809

Thanks to the pest control efforts of existing conservation groups, possum numbers were already relatively low in the first two working block areas. Once our initial knock down work is completed the next step is to assess whether or not possums have been eradicated in these areas. This will be done by activation of a lean detection network involving auto-reporting leghold traps and trail cameras. Any last possums will then be specifically targeted, and the defence phase of the programme

will commence. The programme will then roll out across a new area of the Whangārei Heads.

An exciting part of the project is using new technologies. The team are using auto-reporting celium nodes to send a signal via solar-panelled hubs whenever a leg hold trap is activated. Auto resetting traps are being used that can run for over six months without the need to rest or rebait. This makes accessing difficult and dangerous terrain so much safer.



Mana whenua, hapū and iwi have a long-standing interest in the whenua of Whangārei and the kaupapa of Predator Free 2050 is evolving to include their input and involvement. Navigating the many sacred maunga of the area with support of kaumatua is important and the programme is now involving mana whenua and uri in design and delivery.

Interest in our Predator Free mahi from the community has been very high with our e-newsletter and website being popular. Exciting initiatives are also underway with Parua Bay and Whangarei Heads Primary School's with the Predator Free team helping to promote environmental stewardship with the kids.

Aside from the possum eradication project, a mustelid suppression programme is underway, working with Kiwi Coast.

Predator Free Whangārei also supports Tiakina Whangārei which operates in the urban area and is also working to help enhance rat suppression in the project area.

Predator Free Whangārei recognises that whanau, hapū, iwi are key partners for this project. The project hopes to better engage with mana whenua and be kaitiaki together.

Visit the website and subscribe to the e-newsletters to stay up to date: www.predatorfreewhangarei.nz

Pēwhairangi Whānui- Bay of Islands

Hei whakahoki i te mauri ki te ngahere o te rohe o Pēwhairangi Whānui

Pēwhairangi Whānui (Bay of Islands) is steeped in history, is rich in biodiversity and is one of Aotearoa's most iconic places. Predator Free 2050 resources will support eradication on the three Peninsulas of Mataroa (Purerua), Kororāreka / Russell, and Rakaumangamanga.

Hapū and community groups from each peninsula area are in the process of developing eradication strategies specific to each peninsula, focusing on eradicating predators over the next 10 years, in a staged and managed approach

Russell/Kororareka

The Russell Landcare Trust is the project lead and is partnering with mana whenua, hāpori (community), kaunihera (council) and DOC to create an eco-sanctuary free of introduced mammalian predators, where indigenous biodiversity can thrive, and additional species reintroductions can occur. The project involves shifting the existing long-term suppression efforts towards achieving zero density of the target pests across the entire Peninsula, establishing the basis for wider eradication in the future once further effective eradication tools become available and the surrounding landscape also becomes predator free.

The Russell PF2050 project aims to eradicate rodents and possums in a staged approach, starting on a 400ha peninsula within the Russell Peninsula, expanding this effort over the rest of the Russell peninsula over the next 10 years,

Cape Brett/Rakaumangamanga

Lead by Te Rawhiti 3B2 Ahu Whenua Trust, this project is a collaborative hapu driven project with the initial goal of eradicating possums from the Rakaumangamanga peninsula, and future aspirations for the removal of all other introduced mammalian pest including mustelids (Stoats, Weasels, Ferrets), Rats, feral pigs and feral cats, with the aim of returning the voices of our native taonga species back to our forests.

The project builds on years of dedicated pest control work that has been undertaken on Rakaumangamanga and surrounding areas.

Mataroa (Purerua)

Pest Free Mataroa (Purerua) is a collaborative project involving Kiwi Coast Trust, Ngāti Rēhia and Ngāti Torēhina to remove stoats, possums, and feral cats from the Purerua Peninsula to protect kiwi, Pāteke and other at-risk species. Predator Free 2050 will enhance this existing work.

The goal is to remove predators from the Mataroa (Purerua) Peninsula to allow biodiversity to flourish and to protect taonga species. This will help achieve the long-term vision, for the Mataroa (Purerua) Peninsula to become a healthy biodiverse ecosystem that will provide a legacy for New Zealander. The Project will provide local employment as this is a community-run and community-driven project and therefore will benefit the area on an economic, ecological, and social aspect

7. Kauri Protection





Programme objectives and aims

Sustained controlled diseases are those that are widespread throughout Northland. This section relates to the management of *Phytophthora agathidicida* (kauri dieback) disease in Northland. *P. agathidicida* is managed by a multi-agency collaborative partnership between tāngata whenua, Biosecurity New Zealand, Department of Conservation, Auckland Council and the Northland, Waikato, and Bay of Plenty regional councils.

Objectives

- For the duration of the Pest Plan, prevent the spread of *P. agathidicida* to reduce impacts on biodiversity, cultural and economic values in Northland.
- Ensure coordination with other government agencies and the Department of Conservation to achieve the Pest and Operational Plan objectives.

Aims

- To maintain a complete record of the distribution and severity of *P. agathidicida* in Northland.
- To increase public knowledge and skills and encourage people to take action to help reduce the spread of *P. agathidicida*.

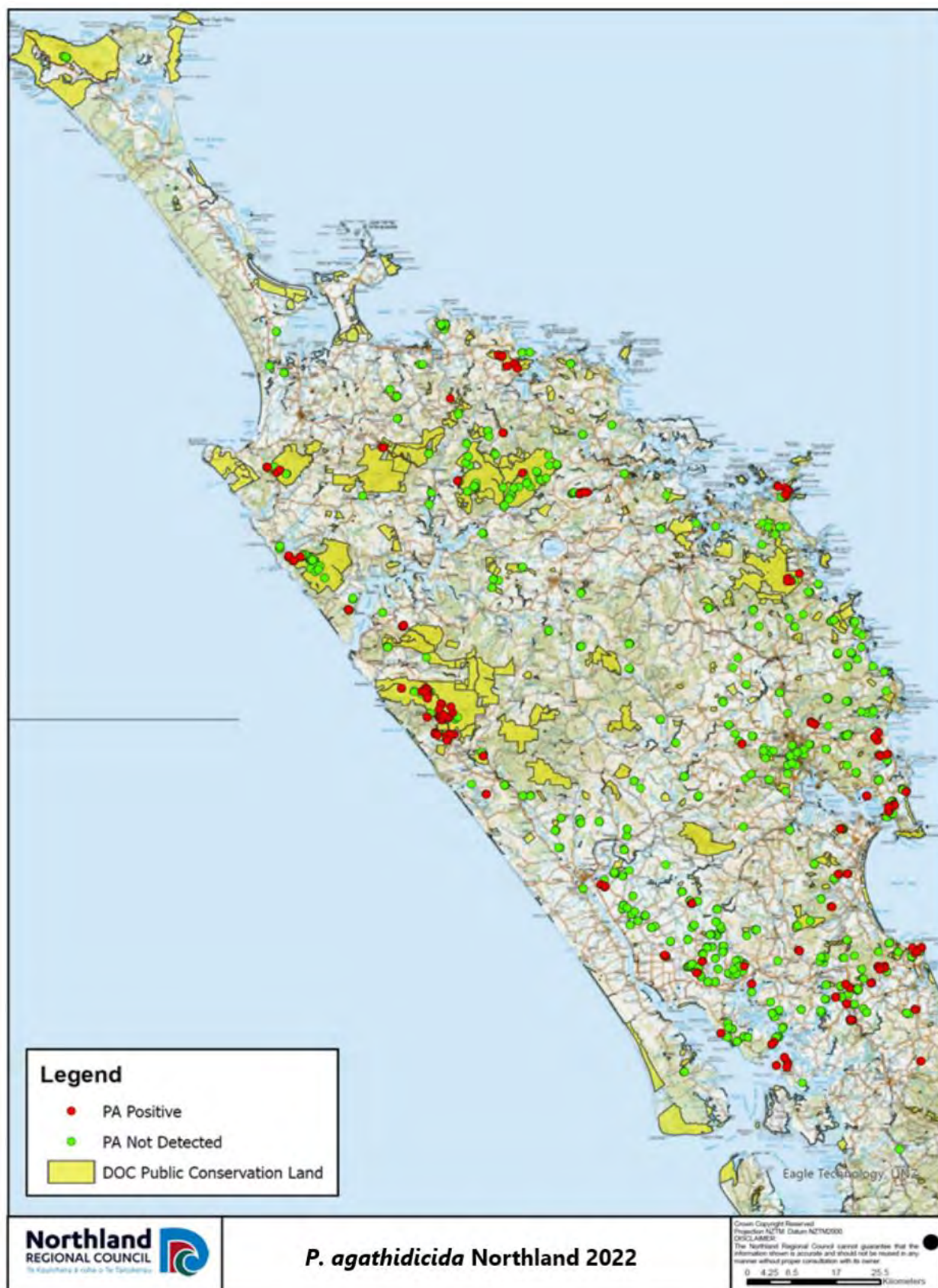
To ensure that measures taken under the Pest Plan are complementary to inter-regional and national approaches to kauri protection.

Programme objectives and aims

Performance Measure	Result	Details					
Soil sampling 100% of remaining aerial survey sites on private land will be sampled and a minimum of 50% will have management plans.	Achieved in part					Overleaf is a map of Northland sample site locations. Positive sites	
		Sample site	Since 2018	2021-22	Total		
		Aerial surveillance	267	-	267		
		Requests/follow ups	48	16	64		
identified 2021-2022 = 2							
The remaining 42 sites identified in the 2017-2018 aerial survey are landowners who have either denied access, or who were unable to be contacted during the year despite repeated attempts. Future compliance actions in respect of these sites will be directed by the new national plan.							
Management plans as above.	Achieved in part						
			2019-20	2020-21	2021-22		Total
		High risk properties	15	3	2		60
		Plans prepared	33	8	2		55
Plan preparation for high-risk properties has been prioritised and is proceeding as quickly as is possible within constraints of staff availability. Some sites are on Māori land with multiple landowners and further work is required to engage with the multiple landowners to develop a plan.							

Mitigation advice

Landowners with sites that have tested negative or deemed to be low risk for *P. agathidicida* are supplied with a mitigation advice plan. This landowner support is undertaken outside of the Pest Plan and is considered a valuable additional measure to help prevent the spread of *P. agathidicida*. Since 2018, 144 mitigation advices have been issued.



Performance Measure	Result	Details								
Incident response times All incidents are recorded, and a response plan developed and implemented within 20 working days	Not achieved	<table><thead><tr><th></th><th>2019-20</th><th>2020-21</th><th>2021-22</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Incidents reported</td><td>16</td><td>15</td><td>18</td></tr></tbody></table> All incidents were responded to, and a plan formulated within 20 days, but plans could not always be implemented due to covid and other factors.		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	Incidents reported	16	15	18
	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22							
Incidents reported	16	15	18							
This performance indicator is difficult for the team to achieve because: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>P. agathadicida</i> sampling cannot be performed in wet conditions and testing takes two months to complete.• A full response is not always practical or necessary within 20 days.										
<i>P. agathadicida</i> distribution Maintain a record of distribution of <i>P. agathidicida</i> disease across Northland.	Achieved	Data has been recorded on both national and council databases. Sampling data is recorded in ARCGIS online and viewed through a <i>P. agathidicida</i> viewer								
Hygiene stations A minimum of 5 hygiene stations installed to improve track hygiene in 2020-2021.	Achieved	<table><thead><tr><th></th><th>2019-20</th><th>2020-21</th><th>2021-22</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Stations installed</td><td>7</td><td>10</td><td>11</td></tr></tbody></table>		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	Stations installed	7	10	11
	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22							
Stations installed	7	10	11							
In addition to the 10 hygiene stations installed in Northland, a further 3 stations were sold to the Department of Conservation (Kauri Coast) and 4 in total sold to Waikato Regional Council (WRC).										

Hygiene stations are an important part of helping ensure visitors to our kauri arrive (and leave) with clean footwear. This year the Biosecurity kauri protection team gave out 11 hygiene stations across Northland. The barrel and grate stations come in two sizes for tracks with varying volumes of traffic.

Hygiene stations 2020-2021	
New hygiene stations provided	11
Replacement guns for existing stations	30
Sterigene concentrate provided	60 L
Construction jobs Whangārei Men's Shed	15
Construction jobs Waipū Menzshed	15
Mountain bike cleaning station	1
Hygiene stations sold to other agencies	7
Upgrades to existing stations	4

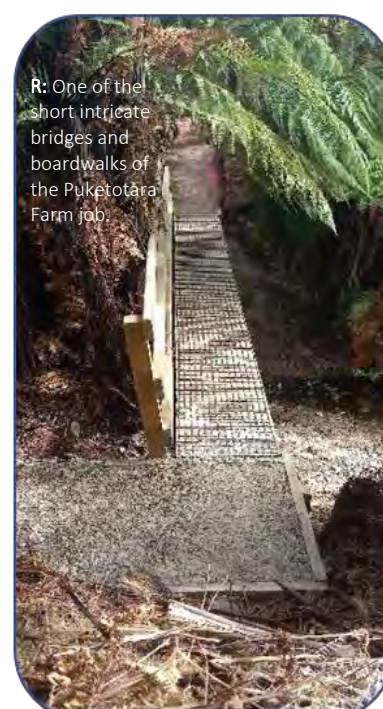
Kauri protection Track Upgrade Project

Council put in a successful bid to the Provincial Growth Fund for \$2M to upgrade sections of the Te Araroa trail and other public tracks on private land in Northland to better protect kauri. The project final agreement was signed off just before Christmas 2020.

The two project contractors Kaikohe based, Johnson Contractors Ltd and Whangarei based, Right Track Limited, have a combined team of 20 staff working on the 21 month project, which includes a series of seven tracks upgrades to the national standard for mitigating *P. agathidicida*, including boardwalks, box steps and resurfacing.

At the time of writing, five out of the seven jobs have been completed, including the more recently completed Upper Kerikeri River Track. A joint agency opening was organised in April 2022 to celebrate the completion of this track. Thus far across all five completed tracks 175 meters of boardwalk, 60 flights of boxed steps have been constructed, 100 meters of geoweb and over 4000 meters of aggregate have been laid. The target figure at the beginning of the project was for 13.89 kilometres of track to be upgraded and this target has been exceeded with more than 14kms of track completed.

KDTM Project	
Track upgraded	1300
Jobs completed	5
Flights of box steps	60
Boardwalk	175m
Geoweb mat	100m
Aggregate resurfacing	4000m
Local staff employed	16



Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Community engagement – events and collateral Deliver a minimum of 10 public engagement events annually.	Achieved	Refer Appendix for more details	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Field Days / A&P Shows	2	0	0 ⁷
		Community events (includes sponsorships)	6	3	0
		School visits	13	24	6
		Stakeholder activities	11	9	12
		Kauri protection workshops	1	8	11
		Pig hunting competitions	10	2	4
		Total events	43	46	33
		Collateral distributed – hygiene kits	500	200	200
		Collateral distributed – Visitor’s flyer	-	3,000	0
		Collateral distributed – All flyers	-	-	500
		Collateral distributed – Waitangi flyer	-	-	50,000

Kauri Protection Flyers

These flyers are full of key information on how to Protect Kauri and are created for specific forest user groups. We have expanded the list to include Mountain Bike Riders and Horse Riders.

This year the team contributed to improving awareness and advocacy for those visiting the Waitangi Treaty Grounds by donating 50,000 specific Visitors to Northland flyers with Waitangi branding.

Hygiene Kits

An essential tool to help protect kauri, approximately 200 hygiene kits were distributed to the community in 2020-2021.

⁷ Events were cancelled by Covid-19.

Clean Card Kauri Protection Workshops

Northland communities include a variety of forest users and people who interact with our forest environment. Whether it be on two legs or four wheels, from hikers to hunters and everything in between, the forest is an integral part of Northland communities, and it is important that our communities can continue this relationship without causing harm to kauri.

In 2020 the kauri protection team created the “Clean Card” workshops which aim to upskill Northland communities on how they can protect kauri whilst still being able to undertake their chosen forest activity.

Target audience

Anyone who spends time in kauri forests or around kauri. This includes mountain bikers, hunters, trappers, contractors, and hikers.

Where

The workshops have been delivered at a wide range of venues across Northland from community halls to marae.

What the workshops involve

These free workshops provide a detailed, informative, and interactive session on kauri protection. Designed to upskill attendees in the areas of identifying *P. agathadicida*, understanding hygiene, and how best to prepare for activities undertaken around kauri, the workshops run for about 3 hours and are made up of a power point and “hands on” interactive displays.

Feedback

The team completed **ten** workshops in 2021-2022 and have received positive feedback. Survey results from 78 participants during the year showed **88%** found the course very useful.

Below: Recipients of a Clean Card workshop held in Whangarei during 21-21 included representatives of Patuharekeke



Performance Measure	Result	Details								
Fencing External funding was sourced and spent on protecting Kauri from P. agathidicida by fencing off forest blocks on private land	Achieved	<table><tr><td></td><td>2021-22</td></tr><tr><td>Number of properties fenced</td><td>3</td></tr><tr><td>Distance of fencing installed (m)</td><td>2850</td></tr><tr><td>Size of forest protected (ha)</td><td>30</td></tr></table>		2021-22	Number of properties fenced	3	Distance of fencing installed (m)	2850	Size of forest protected (ha)	30
	2021-22									
Number of properties fenced	3									
Distance of fencing installed (m)	2850									
Size of forest protected (ha)	30									
Various challenges were faced in organising these jobs including COVID and a lack of available contractors.										

Kauri protection monthly updates

The Kauri Protection Team's monthly update continues to be delivered to a variety of partners and stakeholders now across all of Kauri lands. The update provides recipients the opportunity to know about all the work that is carried out in the Kauri Protection space at NRC. There are now 75 recipients of the monthly update from iwi/hapu, community groups, other councils, DOC and scientists and researchers

8. Freshwater Pests

Riha wai māori



Exclusion freshwater pests

Key points of the exclusion freshwater pest programme

1. Enforcement of rules relating to exclusion freshwater pests.
2. Eradication of exclusion freshwater pests found in Northland.
3. Inspection and enforcement of rules relating to plant nurseries and retail outlets (National pest plant accord). This performance measure is reported in *Section 6.4 Sustained control plants*.

Progress in achieving aims

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Identify new sites Identify new sites of freshwater exclusion pests through passive and active surveillance by council staff, the public, or through regional surveillance.	Achieved		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Confirmed incursions	0	0	0
Exclusion incident investigation Initial investigations for all reported sightings and/or discoveries of exclusion species undertaken within 5 working days.	Not achieved	Initial response to the exclusion species report received took longer than five days. The report was confirmed as rudd.			
Exclusion Incident response A response plan developed and implemented for any new incursion of an exclusion species within 20 working days of confirmation of species.	Not applicable	Report confirmed as rudd within 2 weeks, no response plan required.			
Orfe There was one report of pest fish that the member of the public thought could have been rudd or orfe. Based on the description of the fish and the location at a site with a known rudd population it was concluded that the fish sighted was rudd. Follow up work was also undertaken on a known koi carp management site in a farm dam that was previously identified as a potential historic orfe release site. Previous netting effort had not shown any definitive evidence of orfe presence nor ruled it out, and as a result Northland Regional Council (NRC) and the Department of Conservation (DOC) conducted a netting operation and eDNA sampling in Feb 2022 to provide more information for a determination. From water and fish fin clip samples collected within the dam, genetic evidence indicated that all fish sampled were koi carp. However, opinion from DOC experts suggest these fish are morphological different to koi carp and further netting work is planned to extract larger mature adults for further examination. The lack of an eDNA difference may be due to koi and orfe hybridising, limiting genetic distinction.					

Eradication freshwater pests









Key points of the eradication freshwater pest programme







- Enforcement of rules relating to eradication freshwater pests.
- Eradication of listed eradication freshwater species found in Northland.
- Inspection and enforcement of rules relating to plant nurseries and retail outlets (National Pest Plant Accord). This performance measure is reported in **Section 6.4 Sustained control plants**.

Progress in achieving aims

Performance Measure	Result	Details							
Identify new sites Identify new sites of freshwater eradication pests through passive and active surveillance by council staff, the public, or through regional surveillance.	Achieved	New sites identified		2019-20		2020-21		2021-22	
		Red-eared slider turtle		5	(3)	9	(9)	12	(12)
		Salvinia		3	(2)			-	
		Eastern water dragon		-				1	
		Snake-necked turtle		3	(2)			-	
		Unbracketed figures are the total confirmed new sites identified in the year. Bracketed figures are the subset of the new sites arising from public reports.							
Red-eared slider turtle (2021-2022) Red eared slider turtle reports from the public totalled 16 across Northland. Reports ranged from as far north as Houhora, with the southern extent being Mangawhai. 12 were confirmed as being new locations. Of the 16 reports, five were turtles that were captured/handed in and rehomed with owners who had secure enclosures, and one was euthanised. One of these turtles handed in by the public came from a known active management site where there has previously been multiple reports. Two other reported sightings were related to other existing management sites, and the remaining seven reported sighting locations were at new locations, and these have been added to the management site database for sites requiring search and control work in future, as capacity allows.									
Eastern water dragon An eastern water dragon was sighted and then captured and handed in to NRC by a landowner off Cove Rd, Mangawhai.									
Salvinia Two reports of the National Interest Pest Response species salvinia were confirmed and then past on to the Ministry Primary Industries for control and subsequent monitoring.									
Incident investigation and response Initial investigations for all reported sightings and/or discoveries of eradication species undertaken within 10 working days and control actions completed within 20 days.	Achieved in part			2019-20		2020-21		2021-22	
		Incidents reported		14		11		19	
119 reports of freshwater eradication species were responded to in 2021-2022. One of those reports took longer than the target time for initial response to requestors. Sixteen of these reports related to red eared sliders and there is currently not sufficient capacity to instigate control actions for all reported sightings.									
Resources and staff capacity for freshwater work continue to be a barrier to resolving new reports of eradication species and managing existing sites (currently one staff member), particularly for the increasing number of red-eared slider reports and management sites. Turtles that are established in the wild are extremely wary and need focussed intensive control efforts (timed for suitable conditions) to be successful.									

Performance Measure	Result	Details
Best practice management 100% of NRC freshwater pest plants management sites visited on scheduled best practice rotation (based on biological characteristics of each species and defined in the species programme record in the Council's IRIS database).	Achieved in part	Refer species specific details below.

Eradication freshwater pest management site visits 2021-2022			
Eradication species		Results	Details
	Eastern water dragon	Not applicable	No active management sites.
	Eel grass	Not applicable	No active management sites.
	Nardoo	Achieved	One monitoring status site confirmed to still be free of nardoo.
	Red-eared slider turtle	Not achieved	<p>There are now 16 management sites where turtles are considered likely to be present based on sightings and reports, and 4 sights classified as 'undetermined' because of the unverified nature of the reports or the detail provided.</p> <p>Four of these sites classified as 'Present' are in a related river system (the Hātea river and one of its tributaries) and may be interconnected.</p> <p>No trapping or surveillance work was undertaken at any of the sites due to limited capacity. As there is no current successful best practice for turtle capture in Northland, the methods require further development. Conventional basking traps are subject to vandalism or theft at public sites with the only successful capture using this approach to date requiring a three month set and regular monitoring before the turtle was captured. This is highly impractical for a management approach. Alternative approaches or modifications to existing basking traps will be made to improve catch efficiency of turtles in the 2022-23 year.</p>
	Salvinia	Not applicable	Sites are managed by the Ministry for Primary Industries.
	Senegal tea	Not achieved	Annual inspection not undertaken for the one active site
	Snake-necked turtle	Not applicable	No active management sites.
	Water hyacinth	Not applicable	Sites are managed by the Ministry for Primary Industries.

Eradication freshwater pest management site summary					
Eradication freshwater pest		Adult count			Details
		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	
	Eastern water dragon	0	0	1	No active or monitoring status management sites. One eastern water dragon was captured and handed in to NRC by a landowner off Cove Rd, Mangawhai (Nov 2022).
	Eel grass	0	0	0	No active or monitoring status management sites.
	Nardoo	0	0	0	One monitoring site. This aquatic pest plant is approaching eradicated status.
	Red-eared slider turtle	5	5	16	16 existing active management sites where a turtle is believed to be resident in the wild but could not be captured, and 4 undetermined sites The count is currently based on one adult turtle per site classified as 'present', but one site potentially had more than one turtle present (yet to be confirmed).
	Senegal tea	0	2	2	One active management site.
	Snake-necked turtle	0	0	0	No active or monitoring status management sites. One red-eared slider turtle report was ambiguous and could potentially be a snake-necked turtle but is currently being treated as a red-eared slider management site.

Performance Measure	Result	Details
Red-eared slider distribution Develop database and map tool for managing turtle sightings and reliable turtle surveillance and capture techniques.	Achieved in part	<p>The new database structure developed in 2021-2022 has been maintained and updated. It divides management sites into the categories below:</p> <p>Eradicated: Sites where control effort has successfully eradicated a known population or individual, or the original site locations of instances where turtles have been caught and handed in by the public. This ensures we have a complete record of previous infestation sites and a record of the frequency of pet escapes/turtles being found with uncertain origin.</p> <p>Present: Sites where turtles have been confirmed as present by staff surveillance or by good quality public reports/photo evidence. These should ideally be the target of control operations, where capacity allows</p> <p>Undetermined: Reported sites where it is not clear if a turtle is still present/active at a reported site of because of the nature of the original report (it may be unverified, or second-hand, or lacking in detail). Further surveillance work or reports from the public are required to confirm presence/absence at these sites.</p> <p>Not detectable: Where intensive surveillance work has been carried out and has not resulted in any evidence of a turtle being present (ie the initial report not reliable or was a different species ie. not a red-eared slider).</p> <p>The mapping tool for this database still needs to be refined.</p>

Progressive containment freshwater pests

Key points of the eradication freshwater pest programme

- Enforcement of rules relating to progressive control freshwater pests.
- Eradication or reduction of infestations of progressive containment freshwater pest may be attempted with council in conjunction with Crown agencies and stakeholders where practical.

Progress in achieving aims

Performance Measure	Result	Details								
Incident investigation and response Initial investigations for all reported sightings and/or discoveries of Progressive Containment species undertaken within 10 working days and decisions documented within 20 working days.	Achieved	<table><tr><th></th><th>2019-20</th><th>2020-21</th><th>2021-22</th></tr><tr><td>Public reports</td><td>13</td><td>6</td><td>2</td></tr></table> <p>2 reports of freshwater progressive containment species were responded to in 2021-2022. For both of these reports initial response time targets were met. Actual netting and surveillance operations took or will take longer to initiate because of the resource required and seasonal restrictions.</p>		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	Public reports	13	6	2
	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22							
Public reports	13	6	2							
Incident investigation details <p>There were 2 reports of freshwater progressive containment species.</p> <p>One was responded to at Lake Shag, a dune lake on the Pouto peninsula, where the indication of a potential koi carp incursion was a concern to Te Roroa iwi (kaitiaki of the lake) resulting in a small-scale netting operation and eDNA sampling to attempt to determine presence. No koi carp or other pest fish were captured by nets, and eDNA results proved inconclusive. Further sampling is planned for 2022-2023. It is considered likely that the original sighting of the fish carcass on the lake shoreline was probably goldfish. Further netting work is planned for 2022-2023 to confirm this.</p> <p>The second, more recent, report of a koi carp washed up on the shoreline in the Mangonui-Taipa area is currently being investigated and will be reported on in the new year. While koi carp are not regarded as marine residents, there are several draining catchments (inside and outside containment zones) within the Taipa/Mangonui watershed that are possible source areas from where the koi carp may have originated from. These potential source areas will be evaluated in relation to current records in the database and a follow up plan formulated to investigate in 2022-2023.</p>										
Maintain distribution record Maintain an updated distribution record of progressive containment pest fish species.	Achieved	<p>The pest fish database for all three Progressive Containment species has been updated to reflect the status and management actions undertaken this year for existing sites and new sites. It divides management sites into the categories below</p> <p>Present: Sites where the species has been confirmed as being present to a high degree of certainty.</p> <p>Undetermined: Sites created in response to incursion reports that still require surveillance effort to confirm presence (or absence/not detectable at that site).</p> <p>Not Detectable: Sites where intensive surveillance has been undertaken in response to reports, but the pest species has not been detected and we have a high level of certainty that they are not present at that site.</p> <p>Eradicated: Sites where koi have been confirmed and have been subsequently eradicated (having met post-eradication monitoring surveillance effort minimums).</p>								
Management and eradication actions Training, surveillance, control, and eradication actions attempted for progressive containment pest fish species will be reported annually.	Not achieved	Refer to species specific status and management summaries below.								

Performance Measure	Result	Details
Both the confirmation of reported sites of pest fish, and management actions at known sites is extremely challenging and resource heavy work, because of the intensity and scale of netting required to produce definitive evidence. There is also a seasonal limitation to when this work can be conducted because of water temperature impacts of fish activity. Capacity is still limited to one dedicated pest fish specialist role, and this role works in partnership with other teams to help resource this work. The pest fish specialist has also been working closely with the Department of Conservation, and their key freshwater field officer, to prioritise and deliver netting operations.		



Winged fyke net set in Awanui River (Kaitaia)

Management and eradication actions in 2021 2022

Annual reporting on the status and number of new sites of all Progressive Containment freshwater pests, and the training, surveillance, control, and eradication actions attempted in 2021-2022 are summarised below for each of the three Progressive Containment species.

Koi carp



Outside the containment area

The summer season fieldwork prioritised undertaking surveillance netting and eDNA sampling where applicable at the 'Undetermined' status management sites. The driver of this surveillance work is to provide robust evidence to either confirm presence at the sites, or to reach a high certainty that the reported species is not present and no future work is required. Sites were prioritised based on risk and biodiversity value. This

work was made possible through an ongoing partnership with Department of Conservation and fieldwork assistance from the Check Clean Dry advocate. Similarly, additional surveillance work was completed as part of a Pestfish Training Workshop (Feb – Mar 2022), across two of our management sites coordinated by the Department of Conservation (DOC) and the Northland Regional Council.

Confirmed sites outside the containment area (2 sites)

Location	Type of site	Date confirmed	Activity undertaken 2021-2022
Ōmāmari	Dune lake/wetland	2012	Despite being a high priority site, no management work was undertaken this year. This was due to ongoing access constraints and delays imposed by the landowner of the lake. A further attempt with the landowner will be made to negotiate sampling access to the lake, if that fails, then access will be sought through the use of a Warranted Officer under the RPMP via the Biosecurity Act 1993. This work will be delivered in 2022-2023.
Kaingaroa – Mangatete River	River system	September 2020	A netting operation (including eDNA analyses) of the Mangatete River in Apr 2022 was carried out in partnership with DOC staff. No koi carp were captured in either gill or fyke nets set within the Mangatete River, which is consistent with eDNA evidence also showing no koi carp. However, water levels in the river during summer were considerably low, and fish movement would have been limited, possibly obscuring our sampling efforts. As this is a confirmed koi carp site, further surveillance in winter/spring is planned when water levels are higher, and fish are able to move throughout the system more easily.

Potential sites outside the containment area to be confirmed (10 sites)

Location	Type of site	Activity undertaken 2021-2022
Tangowahine, Awakino river	River system	No work undertaken in 2021-2022 . The site was last visited as part of the May 2021 surveillance work. A variety of native fish, one catfish, and multiple baby goldfish were caught. eDNA sample results were positive for goldfish. The site could possibly be considered a goldfish site (free of koi) but a further surveillance visit, and sampling would be beneficial.
Mangapai, Tauraroa river	River system	The site was netted as part of the Pestfish Training Workshop held in February 2022. This was coordinated in partnership with DOC and included a small number of DOC and council staff as well as kaitiaki rangers from Patuharakeke. Trainees were able to learn about setting and retrieving a range of different nets as well as carrying out eDNA sampling. No koi carp were captured, although some fish were unrecognisable as a result of eel predation. Further netting will be required at this site.
Lake Taharoa, Kai iwi	Dune lake	Drone surveillance was carried out in the lake by a contractor to determine if koi carp moving along the shallow margins of the lake could be detected. No koi were observed by the drone, but the approach is promising, and further trial work using 3D printed koi carp models placed around the shallow lake margins to improve drone pilot detection is planned.
Parapara stream, Taipā	Stream	The site was visited in April (2022) and a range of netting methods (gill and fyke nets) as well as eDNA sampling was carried out to determine if koi carp were present. No koi were captured by gill, fyke or trammel nets or detected by eDNA. However, detection of goldfish by eDNA and field observations of goldfish on the day of sampling suggest landowners may have misidentified koi carp for goldfish. A final netting operation in an un-surveyed section of the Parapara River is planned and if no koi are detected the status of the site will be changed to 'Not detectable'
Ruawai	Drainage canal	Surveillance was carried out in winter when more water was in the canals ; fyke nets were set ~300m apart from the main tidal floodgate which was open at the time of sampling. No koi carp were captured in any of the fyke nets, but some estuarine fish were taken (mullet) indicating estuarine species movement into the drainage channel via the floodgate. The drainage channels typically shallow up the further away from the floodgate you go and in summer the water levels in this drainage system are significantly lower (as was observed in Feb 2022 inspection) than in winter. Fish movement within the drains in summer is therefore very limited along with access to suitable habitat. This may in turn prove to be a limiting factor for koi carp persistence overtime if fish are trapped within the drainage system during summer. Further surveillance during winter flooding conditions is planned and assessment of drainage water levels in summer will also be required
Arapohue	Drainage canals	The site was visited in Feb (2022) as a recce for later netting in winter when water levels are higher. As with the Ruawai drainage canal, this may be a limiting factor for koi carp persistence overtime if fish are trapped within the drainage system during summer. Surveillance netting work is planned for Sept 2022 when water levels in the drain are sufficient for netting.
Ngāraratunua	Pond	This site was confirmed as being goldfish and has been moved from 'Undetermined' status to 'Not detectable' and does not require further assessment or management.
Maungatāpere	Dam	No work undertaken in 2021-2022 and considered a low priority for investigation. Previous netting by the Department of Conservation has only caught goldfish.
Makaka Creek, Te Kōpuru,	Creek	No surveillance was undertaken at this site in 2021-2022. This site is an older 2015 report that found during traceback activities, but with very limited information. Further investigation is required.

Inside of the containment area

New reports of sightings and new sites within containment areas continue to be received, however, without capacity to provide more advocacy, awareness and support to locals and landowners, these populations represent an ongoing threat for further range expansion. There would also be value in further delimiting the progressive containment zones if resources allowed.

Perch



Outside the containment area

Confirmed sites outside the containment area (none)

Potential sites outside the containment area (2 sites)

Location	Type of site	Activity undertaken 2021-2022
Wairua river, Pīpīwai,	River	No surveillance was undertaken in 2021-2022. The site is scheduled for summer surveillance work in partnership with DOC for Apr 2023.
Mareretu	Pond and stream	No surveillance was undertaken in 2021-2022. The site was added based on a reference found in 2014 NIWA report. Surveillance will be carried out in 2022-2023 summer surveillance work streams.

Inside of the containment area

There are only a limited number of sites known from within the three containment areas, and these are relatively discrete sites. Progress could be made on managing the risk posed by these sites, however, without capacity to provide more advocacy, awareness and support to locals and landowners, these populations represent an ongoing threat for further range expansion.

Tench



Outside the containment area

Confirmed sites outside the containment area (1 site)

Location	Type of site	Date confirmed	Activity undertaken 2021-2022
Lake Kapoai, Te Kopuru	Dune lake	2022	<p>Biodiversity funding provided through the Freshwater Improvement Fund was utilised in 2021-2022 to deliver a tench removal operation using trammel and fyke nets, primarily to assess the size composition and spatial structure of tench populations in the lake in view of identifying effective management approaches.</p> <p>The lake is a fully closed system meaning tench are reliant on self-recruiting stocks to persist. Over the 2 days of netting, 117 tench were removed. The spatial composition of juvenile and adult tench from this operation and past operations show juvenile nursery habitats are at the southern end of the lake. Further removal work is planned with the arrival of specialised fishing nets and mesh sizes to enable targeted removal of adult spawning stocks which will further dampen recruitment. This will also provide information around the timing of spawning (gonad assessments) which alongside identifying spawning locations will be key to determining possible management approaches for tench in the lake.</p>

Potential sites outside the containment area (1 site)

Location	Type of site	Activity undertaken 2021-2022
Arapohue	Pond	<p>No surveillance undertaken in 2021-2022.</p> <p>The site was added after a reference was found in the Smith Diaries (a summary of historic release activities undertaken by Stewart Smith). Traceback investigation has identified this site, but Google Earth image review indicates the pond has dried out and refilled multiple times over the years, so it is unlikely the fish have survived. Whilst the site is a low priority for follow up, an investigation in 2023 to confirm its status will be carried out.</p>

Inside of the containment area

The progressive containment zone for tench is centred around the Waitangi River infestation that is not considered feasible to manage with current technology and resources.



Trammel net set in the Awanui river



Tench captured in Lake Kapoai

Sustained control freshwater pests

Key points of the sustained control freshwater pest programme

- Enforcement of rules relating to sustained control freshwater pests.

Progress in achieving aims

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Request response time Response to requests from the public on sustained controlled pests will be responded to within 20 working days.	Achieved in part		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Public requests	20	5	10
		The council database reporting system is not currently able to report on request response times and requires modification to capture response data (rather than close date) for this performance measure			

Community engagement

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Community engagement - events Total number of engagement activities conducted to increase awareness of freshwater pests is maintained, or greater than the previous year.	Not achieved	Refer Appendix for more details	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Field Days / A&P Shows	2	1	0
		Community events / waka ama	7	8	-
		School visits and workshops	3	4	-
		Stakeholder activities	-	3	1
		Pest workshops	5	6	1
		Total	17	22	2
		NRC were involved in delivering a pestfish training workshop in collaboration with the Department of Conservation (DOC) to undertake one week of training in freshwater pest fish and pest plants for staff and kaitiaki rangers from Patuharakeke. Trainees were able to learn about setting and retrieving a range of different nets as well as carrying out eDNA sampling.			
Additional engagement activities involved working alongside Ngai Takoto kaitiaki rangers delivering grass carp removal operations in Lake Heather (Kaitaia) as part of their FIF Funded project. Other planned community engagement events (Field Days/A&P Show, Waka Ama) and workshops or School events were cancelled as a result of COVID-19 restrictions, and will be revisited in 2022-2023.					
The Check Clean Dry awareness campaign is run under the Freshwater programme and is summarised separately on next page.					

Check Clean Dry (CCD)

Check Clean Dry (CCD) is a freshwater pest awareness campaign led and funded by the Ministry for Primary Industries. The campaign is aimed at preventing the spread of freshwater pests between waterways. In Northland, the campaign is managed and implemented by the council and includes employment of a full time CCD advocate in the summer months, as well as input from other staff and contractors. These staff conduct advocacy and surveys at freshwater sites and at events.

Collateral material (educational information and merchandise) is distributed at freshwater events also to the relevant businesses, clubs and freshwater users throughout the region.



Check,
Clean, Dry
Advocacy

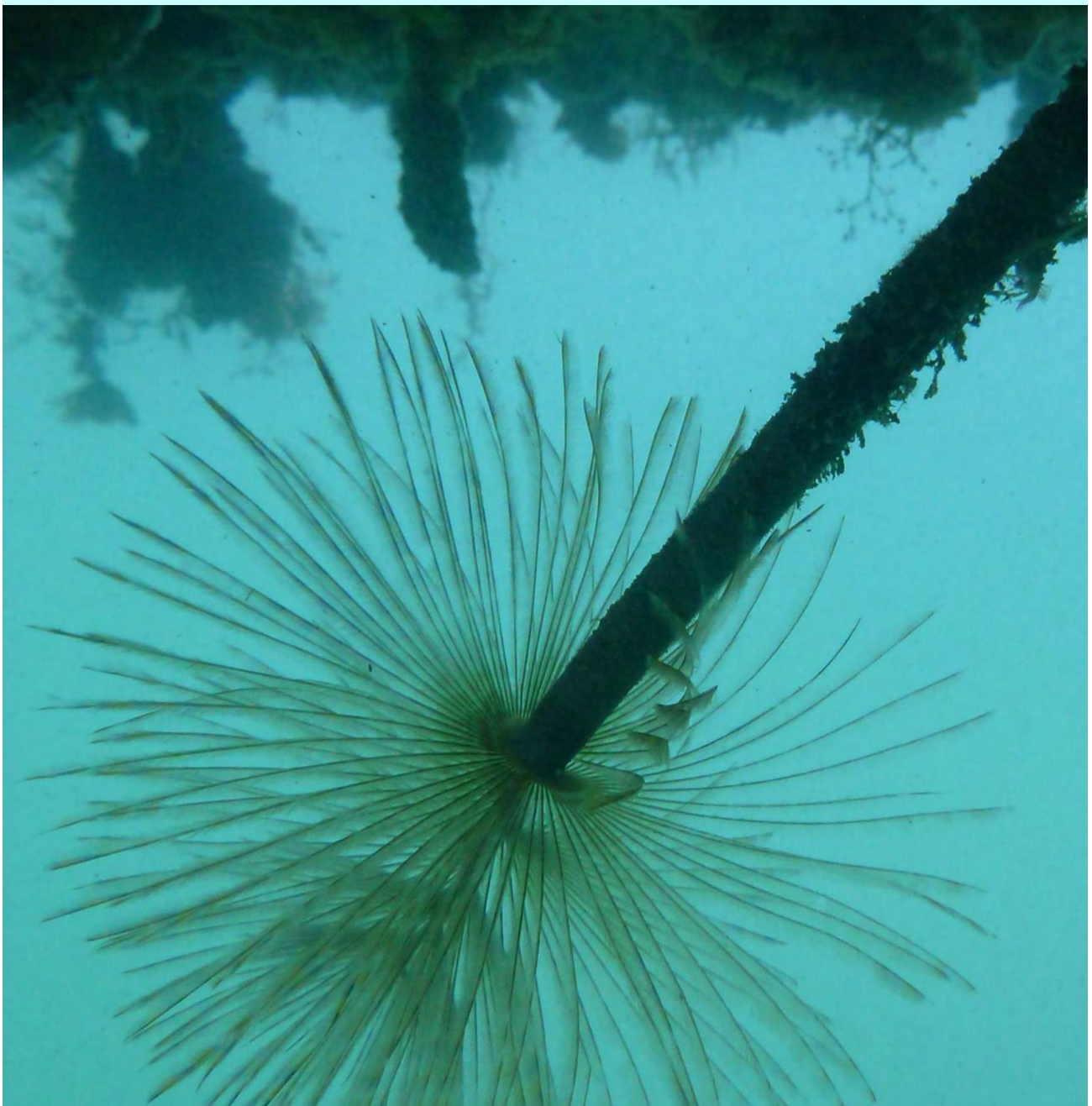
2021-2022



Check, Clean, Dry Events 2020-2021	Location	Date
Ngā Whiringa Hoe Horo a Rohe o Te Tai Tokerau - TTPCA Regional Sprint Trials 2021	Lake Ngatu	18 Dec 2021
Pearl of the North Lake Series 2022	Lake Manuwai - Kerikeri	08 Jan 2022
Te Rarawa Noho Taiao education day	Lake Waimimiha South, Ahipara	11 Jan 2022
Ōtiria\Moerewa spill way Wananga	Ōtiria Marae, Moerewa	25-27 Jan 2022
Kaitaia Saturday Markets	Kaitaia	02 Apr 2022
Parihaka Trail Run	Whangārei falls, Whangārei	27 Mar 2022
Kai Iwi Lakes Open Day	Lake Taharoa	19 Mar 2022

9. Marine Pests and Pathways

Riha tai me te huarahi ki mua



Background of the Marine Pathway Management Plan

Over the life of the Marine Pathway Management Plan council has the following aims:

- To increase the number of vessel owners or persons in charge of vessels complying with the pathways plan rules
- To increase the awareness of the risk hull fouling poses to marine pest spread
- To see a reduction in the rate of spread of established marine pests within Northland
- To help marine stakeholders, coastal marine area occupiers, vessel owners and the public to gain knowledge and skills to help reduce the impacts and spread of sustained control marine pests.

From 2010 council has had a species-led approach to managing marine pests. However, identifying current and potential marine pests for Northland is difficult, so rather than relying solely on the species-led approach, the council has also begun addressing the universal vector of spread. Mediterranean fanworm (*Sabella spallanzanii*) is one of many species that has entered the region via hull biofouling. Taking a proactive approach and encouraging cleaner hulls through a Marine Pathway Management Plan will result in fewer vessels carrying marine pests, such as Mediterranean fanworm, and other biofouling into the region and reduce the risk of new marine pest incursions.

Marine pathway		
Hull fouling: Level of Fouling 2 (LOF2) 'Light fouling' allowed, which means no more than small patches (up to 100 mm in diameter) of visible fouling, totalling less than 5% of the hull and niche areas.		
Marine pests		
Asian paddle crab Australian droplet tunicate Japanese mantis shrimp	Mediterranean fan worm Pyura sea squirt Styela sea squirt	Undaria seaweed

Programme implementation 2021-2022

Programme implementation in 2021-2022 included:

The hull surveillance programme continued as per previous years with levels of fouling recorded and any vessel carrying a named marine pest in a location where that pest is not established placed under a Notice of Direction to have the vessel cleaned. Dive contractors were directed to perform in-water removals where possible on vessels with low levels of fouling to immediately mitigate risk.

Wherever possible, staff informed owners of their vessels level of fouling threshold, reducing the risk of vessels moving between designated places in breach of the Marine Pathway rules. Simultaneously, existing communication and engagement programmes have continued to assist vessel owners and stakeholders with ensuring compliance.

Where Notices of Direction were issued to the owners of vessels found with listed marine pests, these enforcement notices were tracked in IRIS (council's incident logging database) and regular contact was made with vessel owners to ensure they had met the requirements of the notice.

Progress in achieving aims

Vessel compliance to the Marine Pathways Management Plan

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Hull survey The vessel hull surveillance programme will inspect a minimum of 2,000 vessel hulls annually.	Achieved		2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Hulls surveyed	2,048	2,144	2,060
2,060 hulls were assessed, representing between 50 – 60 % of the vessels that pose a risk for the spread of marine pests in Northland.					
Vessel compliance reporting Compliance with the marine pest and pathway plan is recorded and trends over the duration of the plan are analysed.	Achieved	Vessel Compliance	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22
		Overall compliance	47.5%	44.6%	51.3
		Incidents	145	169	194
<p>Hull surveillance and vessel compliance data is reported monthly in the Chief Executive’s report to council.</p> <p>Approximately 51.3% of the vessels inspected met the required biofouling threshold (these are vessels that would be compliant with the Marine Pathway Management Programme rules if the vessel moved between designated areas).</p> <p>This year continued Covid related lockdowns and travel restrictions meant that a larger proportion of the fleet were stationary for longer periods of time than usual when inspected, leading to higher fouling levels. Therefore, as the surveillance programme predominantly inspects stationary vessels it is not an accurate proxy of true compliance.</p> <p>Encouragingly, surveillance efforts this year over the Christmas period, when restrictions were lifted and vessel movements increased, revealed a higher level of compliance (~65%), with divers reporting that vessels on anchor were very clean and relatively free of biofouling.</p> <p>Education around being ‘clean before you go’ continues so vessel owners are aware that their vessel needs to be compliant when they move.</p>					

Introduction and spread of marine pests in Northland

Performance Measure		Result	Details			
New marine pests Introductions of new marine pests to Northland are recorded and trends over the duration of the plan are analysed.	Achieved					
		New Pests Reported	2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	
		From hull surveillance	1	0	0	
		From external monitoring	2	0	1	
The eastern Australian flatback mangrove goby (<i>Mugilogobius platynotus</i>) was recorded for the first time in a saltmarsh wetland adjacent to Ngunguru River, Northland.						
Range extensions within Northland The spread of established pests to new designated areas within Northland are recorded and trends over the duration of the plan analysed.	Achieved					
			2019-20	2020-21	2021-22	
		Range Extension Reports	6	1	2	
Public reports –Whangaroa Mediterranean fanworm (<i>Sabella spallanzanii</i>) was detected on an oyster farm in Whangaroa during equipment maintenance checks. This prompted a comprehensive survey of the structures, sea floor and vessels within the Whangaroa harbour (See more below). During the NIWA Ōpua winter marine biosecurity survey, the ascidian <i>Ciona savignyi</i> was detected for the first time.						

CASE STUDIES

Strengthening national marine partnerships

The Top of the North Marine Biosecurity Partnership (TON) is an alliance between the northernmost regional councils in Aotearoa New Zealand (Northland, Auckland, Waikato, Bay of Plenty, Hawkes Bay and Gisborne), the Department of Conservation and Biosecurity NZ. The partnership has been active in promoting an awareness campaign 'Clean Below? Good to go', supporting national marine biosecurity research and aligning policy and operational procedures.

A key project for the collaboration has been the development of a Pathway Management Plan under the Biosecurity Act – the 'Clean Hull Plan'. One key criterion for success is that the plan acts as a model for a national approach – that is, it can be expanded to

include the remainder of the country in due course as other regions are ready to be brought on board.

This year has seen an exciting development with Central Government committing \$5.56M over the next four years to advance a Clean Hull programme as a pilot in the Top of the North regions, which captures 70% of New Zealand's vessel fleet. Drafting the proposed plan, including the required Biosecurity Act documentation, and a multi-agency management agreement setting out roles and responsibilities for governance and implementation is ready for public consultation. Early testing with elected members, mana whenua, and key stakeholders has shown strong support for the plan and formal public consultation is expected in 2022.

TON Partnership engagement 2021-2022	
Newsletter subscribers	1,005
Facebook – total page likes	546
Facebook – reach	161,198
Instagram reach	36,590
Website unique visits	18,619
Google ads and video impressions	>2,870,000
Google ad clicks	16,769
Google video views	166,446
YouTube Videos Views	166,000

24 incidents are recorded as not having been closed within 5 working days in the year. However, all incidents were risk assessed upon receipt, and a response implemented based on likely harm to the receiving environment. The reporting system requires modification to capture response data (rather than close date) for this performance measure.

Performance Measure	Result	Details		
Incidence response All significant incidents are recorded, and a response plan is developed and implemented within 5 working days.	Response time data not valid		2019-20	2020-21
		Incident response recorded as > 5 working days	58	32
			2021-22	24

Incursion responses 2021-2022



Biosecurity New Zealand
Ministry for Primary Industries
Manatū Ahu Matua

With support from Biosecurity New Zealand, council has funded several responses to marine pest incursions during 2021-2022.

Tutukākā Harbour

Five years after Mediterranean fanworm was last found in Tutukākā, the bay has officially been declared 'fanworm free'. After fanworm was first detected in 2015 on an infected vessel, Northland Regional Council rapidly conducted a dive survey that revealed early signs of an infestation at Tutukākā Marina. Biosecurity New Zealand and NRC were swift to develop a joint response that included a programme of dive surveillance not only of boats and marina structures but also of the seabed, upon the acquiring of further information that fanworm larvae can attach to even the smallest of shells or pebbles.

If elimination efforts hadn't been undertaken, the fanworm population would have increased significantly with potentially damaging impacts to Poor Knights Islands and other high value areas.

Ōpua Harbour

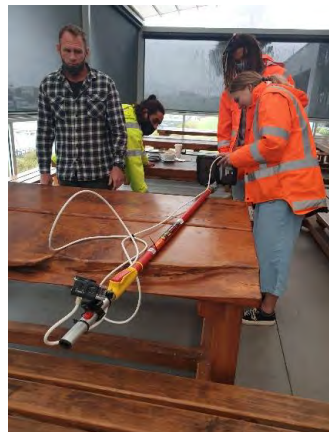
This year has seen divers conduct several different search and destroy surveys in and around the Ōpua basin. Divers have successfully combed the sea floor covering the whole marina footprint, including all mooring and surrounding artificial structures and mooring blocks within the Ōpua basin. While this massive effort did result in a moderate number of Mediterranean fanworm being detected and removed it was very encouraging that a majority of the individuals removed were immature and had not attained a size which is considered to be reproductively viable (~68 juveniles). Additionally, histological analysis on a subset of the remaining individuals revealed that the timing of our diving operations corresponded with critical reproductive timing of this species meaning they were removed prior to spawning.

Community engagement

Performance Measure	Result	Details			
Community engagement – events and activities A minimum of two engagement activities are conducted annually to facilitate an increased awareness of the risk hull fouling poses to the spread of marine pests.	Achieved	Refer Appendix for more details	2019-20	2020-21	2021-2022
		Boat shows and community events	1 ¹⁹	4 ²⁰	9
		School visits / workshops	2	5	6
		Stakeholder activities	6	3	1
		Marine pest workshops	4	3	2
		Total	13	15	18

Hull Surveillance with Patuharakeke

As part of their partnership with Northland Regional Council, kaitiaki from Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust have begun to initiate their own hull surveillance monitoring within the Marsden Cove Marina that lies in their rohe moana. Kaitiaki will use a modified underwater pole camera to inspect vessels without getting into the water. Recently arrived vessels will be targeted as this marina is a port of first arrival for international vessels and has high volumes of domestic travel. This technology will aid in increased detection for marine pests and will provide significant protection to Patuharakeke's rohe moana with positive flow-on effects to the rest of Northland's marine environment.



Patuharakeke kaitiaki learning how to use the pole camera.

Experiencing Marine Reserves and NRC Partnership

The Marine Biosecurity team ran four engagement events with Experiencing Marine Reserves (EMR) between December 2021 and March 2022 as part of their annual summer snorkel series in Northland. The partnership between council and EMR are working on developing an ongoing collaboration in the marine biosecurity space, engaging young people who are passionate about the ocean to keep an eye out for any invasive marine pests when they are in the water. EMR is a national programme that aims to educate people about the importance of our marine environment by experiencing it up close and personal. NRC is one of multiple funders which help support the mahi of EMR in Northland.

Prior to the summer snorkel events, EMR volunteers attended a formal pest identification workshop at council so they could assist participants in looking for marine pests.

The summer snorkel events provided a great opportunity for staff to educate the public about the work NRC does in the marine biosecurity space, throughout Northland and how they can get involved in protecting our marine environment.

The days were held at Long Bay in Oneroa and Maunganui (Deep Water Cove) as well as two at the Reotahi Marine Reserve in Whangārei Heads - locations identified to be of interest to the marine biosecurity program as they are high value areas at risk of marine pest incursions.

All up, these events connected with more than 230 participants who went away with new knowledge to share about marine pests and there's a hope that NRC will once again support these great community day opportunities in the future. Both parties agree that this was a highly successful partnership and hope to continue working together in the future.

TITLE: Regional Rates Collection - update to 30 September 2022

From: Simon Crabb, Finance Manager

Authorised by Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services, on 10
Group Manager/s: November 2022

Whakarāpopototanga / Executive summary

The three district councils administer the collection of the regional council rates on our behalf. The purpose of this report is to provide an update on the collection of this year's current rates and the rate arrears owing to the regional council by each district council.

Table One below summarises the level of rates collected in the first quarter of the 2022/23 financial year and the total outstanding rate balances at 30 September 2022.

Table One Summary Q1, 30 September	WDC		KDC		FNDC		TOTAL	
	22-23	21-22	22-23	21-22	22-23	21-22	22-23	21-22
Amount of Current Year Rates Collected	\$8.9M	\$8.0M	\$2.2M	\$2.0M	\$4.1M	\$4.0M	\$15.2M	\$14.0M
Percentage of Current Year Rates Collected	36.2%	36.9%	28.2%	29.0%	23.6%	26.1%	30.6%	31.9%
Amount of Rate Arrears Collected	\$130K	\$120K	\$74K	\$88K	\$175K	\$189K	\$379K	\$396K
Percentage of Rate Arrears Collected	21.0%	22.1%	8.5%	10.3%	5.6%	7.6%	8.2%	10.2%
Total Current Rates outstanding at end of quarter	\$15.7M	\$13.7M	\$5.6M	\$4.8M	\$13.2M	\$11.3M	\$34.5M	\$29.9M
Total Rate Arrears outstanding at end of quarter	\$488K	\$424K	\$803K	\$764K	\$2.9M	\$2.3M	\$4.2M	\$3.5M
Total Overall Rates outstanding at end of quarter	\$16.2M	\$14.1M	\$6.4M	\$5.6M	\$16.1M	\$13.6M	\$38.7M	\$33.3M

Overall, the three district councils collected a total of 31% of our annual rate strike in the three months to 30 September 2022. As a comparative, 32% was collected for the same period in the prior financial year.

Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation

That the report 'Regional Rates Collection - update to 30 September 2022' by Simon Crabb, Finance Manager and dated 3 November 2022, be received.

Background/Tuhinga

Whangārei District Council (WDC)

The Whangārei District Council collected 36.2% of our annual rate strike to the end of September of this financial year (2021/22: 36.9%).

21% (\$130k) of the WDC outstanding rate arrears balance (2021/22: 22%; \$120k) was also collected in the first three months of this financial year resulting in a closing rate arrears balance (excluding outstanding current year rates) still to be collected of \$488k.

WDC advised:

“they received \$100,000 on the 30th (and had reported up to 29th) which did reduce arrears slightly compared to last year. We are trying new ways of contacting debtors and in October sent emails to 632 debtors that we found email addresses for rather than posting letters. This has had a positive reaction.”

Kaipara District Council (KDC)

The Kaipara District Council collected 28.2% of our annual rate strike to the end of September of this financial year (2021/22: 29%).

8.5% (\$74k) of the KDC outstanding rate arrears balance (2021/22: 10.3%; \$88k) has also been collected in the first three months of this financial year resulting in a closing total rate arrears balance (excluding outstanding current year rates) still to be collected of \$803k.

The KDC Rates Manager was unavailable for comment as she is on leave until 28th November 2022.

Far North District Council (FNDC)

The Far North District Council has collected 23.6% of our annual rate strike to the end of September of this financial year, (2021/22: 26.1%).

5.6% (\$175k) of the FNDC outstanding rate arrears balance has also been collected in the first three months of this financial year, (2021/22: 7.6%; \$189k), resulting in a closing rate arrears balance (excluding outstanding current year rates) still to be collected of \$2.9m.

FNDC advised:

“Last year’s collection activities were different for both current rates and rate arrears which can account for the lower percentage. The Revenue recovery team started mortgage demand pre-calling mid-July 2021 and on August 17, when the country moved into the Delta lockdown, the team made calls to many customers who had not paid their first instalment and those who would normally pay at the front counter. This year, due to team members leaving and taking sick leave, mortgage demand pre-calling did not commence until the middle of August and did not include calls to those who had not paid their first instalment

We will continue to monitor and schedule post instalment due date calling this month for those who have not paid Q1 and Q2 instalments.”

Attachment 1 is the revenue and collections report provided by FNDC outlining the actions they have in place to collect outstanding rate arrears.

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: FNDC Revenue and Collections Report - Q1 2022-23 Rating Year [!\[\]\(3342c215b2a8b663596a81468d5dc314_img.jpg\) !\[\]\(5e22d44aef1f9548ca8274cbfb388e9d_img.jpg\)](#)

MEETING: FINANCE COMMITTEE – NORTHLAND REGIONAL COUNCIL

Name of item: REVENUE AND COLLECTIONS QUARTERLY REPORT as at 8 September 2022

Author: Margriet Veenstra, Manager - Transaction Services

Date of report: 31 October 2022

Executive Summary

This is the first report for the financial year 2022-23 and provides information on action take to collect the Northland Regional Council's current rates and rates arrears

1) Background:

This document has been prepared to outline current and arrears balances for rates as at the 8th of September 2022 for Northland Regional Council, and actions taken by Far North District Council's debt management team for the collection of the monies outstanding.

2) Discussion and options

The data provided is for General Title and Māori Freehold Land rates. Since 1 July 2022, the General Title rates total arrears balance has been reduced by 10%.

General Title rates debt

Key actions since the last report:

- Legal services team preparing applications to the courts for financial assessment for properties where judgment was received but no payments have been made.
- Pre-mortgage demand calling for those properties with mortgages with financial institutions rather than the major banks.

Next actions:

- Recruitment to replace 2 revenue recovery officers who moved to other positions in council at the start of the rating year.
- Pre-mortgage demand calling for all 5 major banks.

For the total number of General Title rates accounts marked as 'Debt recovery action to commence':

- These are properties where there is no mortgage, and we do not have a payment arrangement or direct debit set up on the account.
- 62% of properties only have last year's rates in arrears and 10% have 2 years of arrears. Debt management will be contacting these owners by phone, email, or letter. Any water arrears will be picked up at the same time.
- 28% of these accounts have arrears of 3 or more rating years. Debt management will start the final demand process for these which can result in referral to commence legal proceedings.

Page 4 of 6

Maori Freehold Land rates

The rates debt for Maori Freehold Land rates has reduced by 1.12% since 1 July 2022.

Collection Data

Arrears is the debt outstanding from previous rating years, excluding the current rating year.

An analysis of the arrears for General Title Land and Māori Freehold Land is included in the below tables. The tables now show the ageing in the year the rates were struck for each collection type.

General Title Rates Arrears 2022-2023							
General Title Rates - 8 September 2022	2021-2022	2020-2021	2019-2020	2018-2019	2017+	Total	# accounts
Abandoned Land	13,708	10,692	10,181	9,507	17,946	62,033	39
Payment Arrangement	3,727	771	512	295	330	5,635	21
Deceased Rate Payer	17,113	11,694	10,832	9,773	16,508	65,920	48
Mortgage Run 2022-23	133,650	68,746	11,520	6,446	9,364	229,726	326
Legal Action Commenced (external)	22,219	17,396	15,052	11,015	23,748	89,429	56
Legal Action Commenced (FNDC)	5,873	3,698	3,178	2,836	4,905	20,490	16
Liquidation	374	293	278	259	18	1,222	2
Direct Debit	34,920	6,286	1,942	866	603	44,617	157
Debt recovery action to commence	442,726	166,301	110,820	81,989	98,925	900,762	1,584
Rates Total	674,308	285,877	164,315	122,986	172,347	1,419,833	2,249

MFL Rates Arrears 2022-2023							
General Title Water - 8 September 2022	2021-2022	2020-2021	2019-2020	2018-2019	2017+	Total	# accounts
Abandoned Land	508	401	381	361	662	2,313	2
Payment Arrangement	654	375	245	-	-	1,274	5
Deceased Rate Payer	5,221	4,137	3,911	1,451	1,305	16,024	12
Direct Debit	11,219	7,956	5,611	4,631	6,471	35,889	27
Debt recovery action to commence	438,608	339,929	310,541	133,152	239,229	1,461,460	1,290
Rates Total	456,210	352,798	320,689	139,595	247,668	1,516,960	1,336

Council's remission policies

Council's remission policies are designed to recognise the unique nature of the Far North with its significant areas of unoccupied Māori freehold land. Overall, the policies address issues of financial hardship and the protection of areas of land with particular conservation or community values. The following table shows the instance of remissions for each policy and the financial impact of these remissions.

Policy Name	Remissions as at 8 September 2022		Remissions to 30 June 2022	
	2023		2022	
	Qty	\$value	Qty	\$value
Maori Freehold Land Remissions	402	\$ 134,435.38	401	\$ 126,595.35
Charitable or Community Organisations	67	\$ 36,178.16	66	\$ 47,912.02
Remission of Postponements	0	\$ -	46	\$ 70,544.37
Common use properties	456	\$ 157,982.82	484	\$ 144,253.47
Properties partly in District	1	\$ 228.35	1	\$ 196.61
Conservation Property	248	\$ 29,849.24	248	\$ 44,745.74
Unusable Land	2	\$ 1,014.39	1	\$ 1,841.03
School Sewerage Remission				
Excess Water Remissions				
Total	1,176	359,688	1,247	\$ 436,089

Page 2 of 2

TITLE: Council submission - National direction for plantation and exotic carbon afforestation

From: Justin Murfitt, Strategic Policy Specialist

Authorised by Ruben Wylie, Pou Tiaki Taiao – Group Manager Environmental Services, on
Group Manager/s: 17 November 2022

Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga

This report seeks retrospective approval of a submission lodged on behalf of council under delegated authority. The submission was approved under delegated authority to the Executive Leadership Team because the matter was considered to be of significance to the region and to have implications for council functions, however the consultation period did not enable it to be considered at a formal council meeting (the submission period closed 18 November 2022). Council Delegations Manual requires that submissions lodged under delegated authority by the Executive Leadership Team must undergo retrospective approval by council.

The submission relates to government proposals to include exotic carbon forestry within scope of the National Environmental Standards for Plantation Forestry (NES-PF). The rationale for the change is to ensure exotic carbon forestry is subject to appropriate controls to manage adverse effects given there are very limited council rules applied to this land use and it is currently exempt from the NES-PF – there is also significant potential for expansion of exotic carbon forestry as a result of rising carbon prices. The consultation document also proposes other changes to better manage wildfire risk and technical adjustments to existing NES-PF provisions to better manage both exotic plantation and carbon forestry.

The submission is attached (Attachment 1). It is recommended that council retrospectively approve the submission.

Recommendation(s)

1. That the report 'Council submission - National direction for plantation and exotic carbon afforestation' by Justin Murfitt, Strategic Policy Specialist and dated 1 November 2022, be received.
2. That council retrospectively approve the Attached submission on National direction for plantation and exotic carbon afforestation.

Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Council retrospectively approves the submission	The government is able to take council's views into consideration Council is seen to be representing the region on central government initiatives	None

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
2	Council does not approve the submission	None	The submission would have to be formally withdrawn and government would not put any weight on the points made.
3	Council seeks changes to the submission and that it is re-submitted to government.	Unclear	The amended submission may not be accepted after the consultation has closed and government may not put any weight on the points made

The staff's recommended option is Option 1.

Considerations

1. Climate Impact

The subject matter relates to the management of exotic plantation and carbon forestry at a national scale and is therefore relevant to both climate change mitigation and adaption. While the government proposals could affect regional responses to climate change once enacted, the lodging of a submission on the proposals does not in itself materially affect council's roles and functions or the ability respond to climate change issues.

2. Environmental Impact

The subject matter relates to the management of exotic plantation and carbon forestry at a national scale and is therefore relevant to the management of environmental effects in the region and has implications for council functions. However, the lodging of a submission on the government proposals does not in itself materially affect council's roles and functions. If the government's proposed options proceed, it is likely to result in greater control over the environmental effects associated with exotic plantation and carbon forestry.

3. Community views

Exotic forestry is known to be of interest in the region given it is a common land use important for social and economic well-being but can also generate adverse effects. There have also been concerns raised about land use change as a result of strong economic incentives for carbon forestry and loss of productive farming land. There are likely to be diverse community views on the subject matter but council lodging a submission on the government proposals will not materially affect communities and council can be seen to be representing the interest of the region. Individuals can also lodge submissions reflecting their own interests.

4. Māori impact statement

Exotic forestry is known to be of interest to Māori both in terms of an existing and / or potential land use option, but also in terms of potential environmental impacts in some cases. While there are likely to be diverse views on the subject matter, the opportunity presented by exotic carbon forestry is known to be of particular interest to Māori in Te

Taitokerau, however council lodging a submission on the government proposals will not materially affect Māori. Māori also have the opportunity to lodge submissions on the government proposals reflecting their own point of view.

5. Financial implications

While there are implications for council if the government proposals proceed, there are no financial implications associated with council lodging a submission on the proposals or relating to council's retrospective approval.

6. Implementation issues

While there are implications for council if the government proposals proceed, there are no financial implementation issues associated with council lodging a submission on the proposals or relating to council's retrospective approval of the submission.

7. Significance and engagement

In relation to section 79 of the Local Government Act 2002, this decision is considered to be of low significance when assessed against council's significance and engagement policy because it is part of council's day to day activities. This does not mean that this matter is not of significance to tangata whenua and/or individual communities, but that council is able to make decisions relating to this matter without undertaking further consultation or engagement.

8. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance

There are no material policy or legislative compliance risks associated with council lodging a submission on the government proposals or relating to council's retrospective approval of the submission.

Background/Tuhinga

In October 2022 the Government released a consultation document on options to better manage exotic forestry using national direction under the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). A key proposal is to make exotic carbon forestry subject to the National Environmental Standards for Plantation Forestry (NES-PF), which applies controls on a range of plantation forestry activities to manage adverse environmental effects.

The rationale for the change is that there is currently a regulatory gap in the RMA for the management of exotic carbon forestry as a land use. Currently the NES-PF only applies to production forestry (i.e. forestry with a harvest component) and typically district and regional plans are silent on this land use. A related issue is that higher carbon prices could lead to a significant expansion of exotic carbon farming as a land use without adequate controls on location or ongoing management.

The consultation document also proposes other amendments to the NES-PF to better manage wildfire risk and technical amendments to improve the functionality of existing controls in the NES-PF.

The subject matter is of interest to council and the region generally as forestry is a widespread land use in Te Taitokerau and soil conservation / sediment mitigation is a key element of council activity. The proposals would (in the view of staff), enable greater control over the location and management of exotic carbon forestry, which currently falls into a regulatory gap given it is exempt from the NES-PF regulations and there are no controls on afforestation for exotic carbon forestry in district or regional plans. This is despite the fact that many of the environmental effects of exotic carbon forestry can be similar to plantation forestry and there is a need to ensure afforestation and

associated activity is managed appropriately (such as controls on setbacks from waterways, earthworks, river crossings and management of wilding tree risk).

The timing of the consultation coincided with local government elections and council induction meaning the matter could not be considered at a formal council meeting – submissions closed 18 November 2022. Staff therefore developed a draft submission on the consultation generally in support of the government proposals. The draft submission was circulated to councillors for comment prior to being approved under delegated authority to the Executive Leadership Team (Refer Attachment 1). The delegation requires that council retrospectively approve the submission. This report recommends that council approve the attached submission in retrospect.

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: NRC submission on National direction for exotic forestry [↓](#) 

Submission



To: Ministry for Primary Industries mpi.forestry@mpi.govt.nz

By: Northland Regional Council

On: Discussion paper 2022/10: National direction for plantation and exotic carbon afforestation

1. Introduction

Northland Regional Council (NRC) appreciates the opportunity to submit on the Discussion paper: *National direction for plantation and exotic carbon afforestation* (the discussion document). NRC's submission is made in the interest of promoting the sustainable management of Northland's natural and physical resources and the wellbeing of its people and communities.

2. Background

- 2.1. Sediment and its impacts on freshwater and coastal receiving environments is one of Northland's most widespread and challenging water quality issues. It is a landscape scale 'legacy' problem requiring landscape scale solutions, as a large fraction of total sediment run-off (about 50%) is estimated to come from erodible hill country and about 40% of the region's grazing land is classified as highly erodible. Forestry (in various forms) is therefore an important part of the remedy for Northland's sediment problem. It is also an important land use in Northland for social, cultural and economic reasons and provides an opportunity to facilitate effective emissions reduction, promote positive environmental outcomes, and ensure a just and equitable transition to a low carbon economy.
- 2.2. Council has developed and supported a number of projects to address the sediment problem (several with government support) including:
 - The Kaipara Moana Remediation programme, a \$300 million dollar programme to reduce sediment loads to the Kaipara Harbour through farm planning and targeted afforestation
 - Hill Country Erosion Fund support– including grant funding for planting new forests on highly erodible land for soil conservation purposes
 - Environment fund grant scheme to support landowners to improve water quality / aquatic ecosystem health through land management treatments.
- 2.3. Getting the 'right trees in the right place for the right purpose' is a key element of the recipe needed for Northland to reduce sediment in our waterways. While the National Environmental Standards for Plantation Forestry (NES-PF) settings provide scope for councils to manage plantation forestry, there is a regulatory 'gap' in relation to exotic

carbon forests that are 'non-productive' (i.e. there is no harvest activity of any type), as the NES-PF does not currently apply to this type of forest.

- 2.4. We recognise councils can develop district or regional rules to manage exotic carbon forestry, but many of the potential effects of exotic carbon forestry are the same as plantation forestry (such as earthworks, river crossings and vegetation clearance for establishment, wilding risk, fire risk, shading and afforestation on sensitive sites such as outstanding landscapes or significant natural areas). We therefore consider the most logical and efficient approach is to amend the NES-PF so it also applies to all exotic forests including exotic carbon forests. We do not see a need for additional / separate national standards mandating a consent process for exotic carbon forestry provided adequate scope for controls in district and regional plans is provided under an amended NES-PF.
- 2.5. One reason for this is that as we understand it, forestry (including exotic carbon forestry) is of particular interest to Māori as a land use especially for remote land with limited development options. We would not like to see changes made at a national level that would unduly constrain this option or impede the realisation of the multiple cultural, social, economic and environmental co-benefits that can result from well designed and managed forests. We'd strongly recommend targeted consultation with Māori before finalising changes to the current regime.

3. Submission

Including exotic carbon forestry in the NES-PF

- 3.1. We agree with the problem statement set out on Page 20 of the discussion document – we would add that a significant increase in the price of carbon / NZU has the potential to result in large-scale land use change to carbon forests (most of which are likely to be exotic under ETS settings). Without adequate controls this outcome has the potential to impact on the wellbeing of our communities and the environment.
- 3.2. Current national direction requires that councils manage adverse effects on certain natural and physical resources – the NES-PF currently controls the effects of plantation forestry for this purpose, including restrictions on afforestation in regulations 9 – 17. Regulation 6 of the NES-PF also enables councils to develop more stringent district / regional rules to give effect to national instruments, matters of national importance and unique and sensitive environments. However, under the status quo, exotic carbon forestry is not managed by the NES-PF despite effects being similar to plantation forestry.
- 3.3. Examples of current (or pending) national direction that is very likely to require management of exotic carbon forestry include:
 - a) the coastal environment in accordance with the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS), especially Policies 11, 13 and 15.
 - b) protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes in accordance with s6(b) RMA

- c) freshwater (water quality and quantity) in accordance with the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (NPS-FM)
- d) significant natural areas in accordance with section 6(C) RMA and the Proposed National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity (NPS-IB)
- e) highly productive land in accordance with the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022.

The main environmental effects of concern relating to exotic carbon forestry relate to locational impacts associated with afforestation (such afforestation on sensitive sites) and lifecycle issues (such managing the risk of wilding trees). As noted above, the NES-PF manages these potential effects for plantation forestry, but exotic carbon forestry is currently exempt from NES-PF controls. This means many councils would need to develop plan provisions to manage exotic carbon forestry. While this retains flexibility, it is likely to be very inefficient as councils would essentially have to duplicate much of the NES-PF in district or regional plans under the RMA.

3.4. The reasons for this are outlined below:

- i. Many of the effects of plantation forestry managed by the NES-PF are relevant to exotic carbon forestry and should also apply – particularly those NES-PF provisions that manage establishment activity (wilding tree risk, earthworks, river crossings, and vegetation clearance) and protect sensitive sites from afforestation (such as outstanding features / landscapes and significant natural areas).
- ii. Setbacks from dwellings, papakainga, urban land and roads to manage amenity and nuisance (such as shading) are relevant and should also apply.
- iii. Setbacks from waterbodies are also likely to be warranted for exotic carbon forestry given potential for change in circumstances/forest management change.
- iv. Requirements for written notice of permitted forestry activities (such as afforestation, earthworks and river-crossings) are useful for compliance monitoring.
- v. It takes time to develop plan provisions under the RMA to manage exotic carbon forestry (likely several years), leaving a regulatory 'gap' whereas expanding the NES-PF to include exotic carbon forestry is likely to be much quicker and means many of the main concerns with establishment of exotic carbon forests can be addressed.
- vi. Process costs of multiple councils independently developing district and regional plan provisions to manage exotic carbon forestry are likely to be high and will result in inconsistency.
- vii. Duplication of NES-PF type controls in district / regional plans to manage exotic carbon forestry will mean added complexity and uncertainty.

3.5. We therefore support amendments to the NES-PF to include exotic carbon forestry and apply the same or similar controls to manage potential environmental effects of this land use. The NES-PF allows councils to develop more stringent rules for plantation forestry in certain circumstances (as outlined in Regulation 6). It should be

made explicit that the scope for more stringent district and regional plan rules in Regulation 6 also extends to exotic carbon forestry to retain the flexibility to manage effects / natural resources of local concern.

- 3.6. Recognising the NES-PF was designed to manage production / harvest forests, we do not see any major issues if these NES-PF controls also apply to exotic carbon forests, noting that forest management regimes may change and some similar activities may also occur in exotic carbon forests (e.g. river crossings, or earthworks for limited harvest). However, there may be a need for new / amended controls in the NES-PF if exotic carbon forestry is included – for example, restrictions on afforestation on ‘red-zone’ land (land with the highest risk of erosion / mass movement) for permanent exotic carbon forests may not be necessary given harvest activity presents the most risk and permanent forest cover is likely the most appropriate land use for much of our red-zone land. In Northland, encouraging permanent / continuous cover forests is a solution for managing land with high erosion risk and so we consider essential that the legislative regime does not present an unnecessary barrier to this activity.
- 3.7. We support the NES-PF managing environmental effects of exotic carbon forestry and consider it would be effective in managing the most common effects / concerns that are likely to be consistent across the country.

Management plans for exotic carbon forests

- 3.8. We have some reservations about requiring management plans for *all* exotic carbon forestry – it is unclear what additional benefit they would provide over and above the controls in the NES-PF and obligations under the ETS. There is also a risk that they become an administrative burden for councils and forest owners. We’d suggest a size threshold be considered or triggers for management plans based on environmental risk (such as proximity to sensitive environments).
- 3.9. If they are pursued, we recommend they be limited to ensuring environmental effects are managed over the forest lifespan (e.g. managing the transition to other forest species, management of significant / sensitive environments, wilding tree / pest management and wildfire risk). Managing potential impacts on water yield is another area where management plans could add value. Other activities (afforestation setbacks, earthworks and river crossings etc), tend to be one-off activities better managed through existing NES-PF permitted activity controls that also apply to exotic carbon forestry (or the resource consent process if applicable). They should not however duplicate any ETS requirements or relate to ‘carbon’ outcomes beyond the scope of the RMA.
- 3.10. If management plans are to be required, we would strongly recommend that section 106 of the NES-PF be amended to enable councils to charge for monitoring or compliance activity related to implementation of management plans.

Managing social, cultural, and economic effects (Part B of the discussion document)

- 3.11. While we recognise the issues set out in the problem statement at Page 29 of the discussion document, we do not consider a national instrument requiring resource consent for afforestation (of any type) is the best response at this point. This is because:
- i. Councils have discretion to manage forestry activity through 'bespoke' rules in district and regional plans if needed (either through rules that are more stringent than the NES-PF or to manage effects not covered by the NES-PF). We note regional councils across NZ are currently working on plan changes to implement the NPS for Freshwater Management 2020 (to be notified by late 2024) – many of which could include controls on forestry for freshwater management purposes.
 - ii. Social, cultural and economic effects are 'localised' and not nationally consistent in nature, scale or severity. National direction requiring resource consent for most forestry activity may frustrate more than assist local objectives (e.g. hinder / add costs to forestry activity that is of cultural, social or economic benefit, or promote environmental outcomes such as soil conservation and erosion control).
 - iii. Additional control over and above the NES-PF on forestry activity (of any type) is best progressed at regional scales through rigorous spatial planning that can consider a wider range of environmental, socio-economic, and cultural impacts and / or benefits. We note spatial planning is a key element of the future resource management system.
 - iv. There is potential for undue additional administrative and compliance costs associated with national instruments such as a new national environmental standard, which can necessarily be a 'blunt' tool compared with locally tailored responses.
 - v. The changes to the NES-PF to include controls on exotic carbon forestry will address most of the concerns with this activity.
- 3.12. We therefore do not support resource consent requirements for forestry set through a national instrument (other than changes to the NES-PF supported above). We do however support the option to amend the NES-PF so it is explicit that councils have the ability to make plan rules and supporting policies and objectives for forestry on matters outside the scope of the NES-PF and to enable councils to make more stringent (or lenient) rules relating to afforestation in accordance with Regulation 6 (and any subsequent amendments to reflect recent national direction).

Improving wildfire risk management

- 3.13. Wildfire is likely to be a growing risk for all forest types with climate change, but is especially the case in relation to exotic carbon forests where fuel loads are less likely to be actively managed (e.g. through pruning and thinning). We therefore support amending the NES-PF so all forests are required to have a wildfire risk management plan (WRMP), with the caveat that the detail / requirements being commensurate with scale of the forest (i.e. a simple plan for small blocks and more comprehensive for larger forests). However, councils are not experts in wildfire risk management and would not be best placed to assess the adequacy of such plans - their role should

therefore be limited to ensuring a WRMP has been developed and any conditions have been met. We support the proposal for regular review of WRMP given circumstances and / or risks can change reasonably quickly – a five-year review period is probably adequate for smaller forest blocks but may need to be more frequent for larger forests or where risks / consequences are high (e.g. forests are close to housing or sites vulnerable to fire damage). We'd also support strongly development of templates for WRMP.

- 3.14. If management plans are to be a requirement for all exotic carbon forests, we'd support this being included as a component – otherwise it could be a standard clause in the amended NES-PF so it applies to all new and existing exotic forestry.

Wilding conifer risk management

- 3.15. We support both proposals to a) update the Wilding Tree Risk Calculator and guidance and require the submission of a standardised worksheet assessment to councils at least six months prior to planting and b) to assess wilding tree risk at replanting. Requiring provision of the assessment six months prior to planting is far more practical compared with the current 20 working day minimum which does not allow enough time to resolve any problems. Wilding risk can change over time so should also be reassessed at replanting to ensure the activity remains appropriate and risks are managed.

Slash management

- 3.16. We do not have a great deal to say on slash management other than it appears logical to require slash management be a mandatory element of harvest management plans. The other proposals would also clarify requirements and are also supported.

Operational and technical issues / amendments

- 3.17. The proposals to address operational and technical issues appear logical and would clarify or simplify matters, especially those relating to allowing 'joint notice' and reducing notice periods for low-risk activity. We make some further comment below:
- i. Erosion susceptibility classification (ESC): there are currently resolution and data limitations in ESC mapping, and this risks misclassification of land. ESC mapping is based off LRI which we know is of variable quality throughout the region and between regions. We also have far more advanced methods for identifying erosion risk which should be able to be applied (e.g. Physiographics). Whilst we acknowledge that ESC is a national data set, and not all regions have alternatives, where advanced alternatives do exist, these should be able to be used. Misclassification of erosion susceptibility potentially amplifies adverse effects across a range of areas whereby highly erodible land misclassified as ESC yellow or green is not subject to NES-PF controls and potential mitigations available through the consent process (e.g. for harvest and associated activities such as forest quarrying).
 - ii. Pre-planting vegetation clearance: Regulation 5(3)(a) of the NES-PF excludes pre-afforestation clearance but vegetation clearance at a large scale to establish

a forest can have significant effects, and these effects are common to both carbon and plantation forestry. We understand the year one review suggests: “...that the NES-PF should include vegetation clearance rules to ensure that afforestation does not occur on land that has, or may develop, high indigenous biodiversity values.” We support the removal of 5(3)(a) so that the NES-PF includes pre-afforestation activity such as controls on clearance of native vegetation – this could be a more pressing concern if the price of carbon increases dramatically thereby adding incentives for the clearance of native cover for exotic carbon forestry. However, controls on pre-planting vegetation clearance in the NES-PF should not include re-planting of areas that have been previously harvested (i.e. controls should be limited to vegetation clearance for afforestation only and should not restrict the re-planting forest species following harvest).

Conclusion

We thank the Ministry for the opportunity to comment. We consider there is some urgency in improving the management of exotic carbon forestry – the most efficient and effective short-term solution is to include this type of forestry in the NES-PF as this will ensure a consistent approach and address the most common / apparent effects while enabling the benefits of forestry.

Signed on behalf of Northland Regional Council



Jonathan Gibbard

Chief Executive

Dated: 14 November 2022

TITLE: Council submissions - Draft Kaipara District Plan and Far North District Plan

From: Ingrid Kuindersma, Policy Planner

Authorised by Ruben Wylie, Pou Tiaki Taiao – Group Manager Environmental Services, on
Group Manager/s: 02 November 2022

Executive summary/Whakarāpopototanga

The Council Delegations Manual requires that submissions approved under delegated authority must be retrospectively authorised by council. This report seeks retrospective approval of submissions on the Proposed Far North District Plan and the Draft Kaipara District Plan lodged on behalf of council under delegated authority. The content of the submissions was discussed in a workshop with the previous council and draft documents were circulated for comment, however, timeframes did not allow for approval at a formal council meeting.

Recommendation(s)

1. That the report 'Council submissions - Draft Kaipara District Plan and Far North District Plan' by Ingrid Kuindersma, Policy Planner and dated 2 November 2022, be received.
 2. That council retrospectively approve the attached submissions on the Draft Kaipara District Plan and the Proposed Far North District Plan
-

Options

No.	Option	Advantages	Disadvantages
1	Council retrospectively approves the submission	The district councils receive NRCs input on drafting their district plans. in a manner that is consistent with regional issues.	None
2	Council does not approve the submission	None	The submission points would need to be formally withdrawn and the district councils would not be able to consider the matters raised.
3	Council seeks changes to the submission.	Uncertain	The only changes likely to be accepted would be the withdrawal of parts of the submission.

The staff's recommended option is Option 1

Considerations

1. Climate Impact

The submissions reference climate change and suggest some changes to the way the district plans are addressing this issue, however, lodging the submissions will not materially affect NRCs response to climate change.

2. Environmental Impact

The content of the submissions addresses the potential environmental impacts related to the wording of the district plan, however, lodging the submissions will not materially impact NRC's roles and functions.

3. Community views

Council's submissions are intended to advocate for the interests of the region. Both district plans have been the subject of mandatory public consultation and therefore individuals in the community have had the opportunity of raise matters relating to their own interest.

4. Māori impact statement

Issues of interest to Māori are discussed in the submission documents, however, the lodgement of this submissions will not materially affect Māori. Māori have also had the opportunity to lodge submissions raising their own matters of importance.

5. Financial implications

There are not considered to be any financial implications associated with the lodgement or retrospective approval of

6. Implementation issues

There are not considered to be any implementation issues with lodgement or retrospective approval of the submissions.

7. Significance and engagement

In relation to section 79 of the Local Government Act 2002, this decision is considered to be of low significance when assessed against council's significance and engagement policy because it is part of council's day to day activities. This does not mean that this matter is not of significance to tangata whenua and/or individual communities, but that council is able to make decisions relating to this matter without undertaking further consultation or engagement.

8. Policy, risk management and legislative compliance


There are no material policy or legislative compliance risks associated with council lodging a submission on the government proposals or relating to council's retrospective approval of the submission.

Background/Tuhinga

In late July, Kaipara District Council released their Draft District Plan and Far North District Council released their Proposed District Plan. A workshop was held with the previous council on the 30 August to outline the plan provisions and seek guidance on the content of the submissions. It was agreed that draft submissions be circulated to councillors and TTMAC for comment but due to timeframes the submissions would be lodged under delegated authority. Both submissions have subsequently been lodged under delegated authority to the Planning and Policy Manager (Refer

Attachments 1 and 2). The delegation requires that council retrospectively approve the submission. This report recommends that council approve the attached submissions in retrospect.

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: Feedback on Draft Kaipara District Plan [↓](#) 

Attachment 2: Proposed Far North District Plan submission [↓](#) 



Feedback on the Draft Kaipara District Plan

From: Northland Regional Council

Attn: Michael Day
Strategy, Policy and Governance Manager
Kaipara District Council

NRC Contact: Ingrid Kuindersma
Policy Planner
ingridk@nrc.govt.nz

1. Northland Regional Council (NRC) welcomes the opportunity to provide feedback on the Draft Kaipara District Plan (draft plan). This feedback is made in the interests of sustainable management of natural and physical resources within the Kaipara district and the Northland region.
2. NRC has reviewed the draft plan against the following overriding principles:
 - The need for district plans to assist district councils to carry out their functions to achieve the purpose of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA), and
 - The need for district plans to 'give effect to' national and regional policy statements and to not be inconsistent with regional plans, and
 - NRC's statutory obligations, roles and functions under the RMA as well as other Acts, including the Local Government Act 2002.
3. The feedback is also framed in the context of our community outcomes as set out in the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan:
 - Healthy waters for the environment and our people
 - Resilient, adaptable communities in a changing climate
 - Safe and effective transport networks connecting our region
 - Meaningful partnerships with tāngata whenua
 - Protected and flourishing native life
 - A strong and sustainable regional economy

Our Feedback

4. **Overall Structure**
 - 4.1 The draft plan appears to align well with the format set out in the National Planning Standards and the e-plan functionality is straightforward to navigate. The district plan map viewer functions work well.

- 2 -

5. Cross-Boundary Matters

- 5.1 There are often difficulties in ensuring marine activities have the supporting land-based facilities required - an example is providing appropriate services for mooring areas / commercial wharves (such as public access, parking and waste facilities). Mangawhai Harbour is an example of this. We suggest the cross-boundary matters section be complemented by policy in the coastal environment and infrastructure sections that seek subdivision, land use and development that is compatible with and where practicable complements use / activity in the coastal marine area.
- 5.2 There are likely to be cross-boundary issues relating to jurisdictional boundaries with adjoining councils (eg. incompatible / inconsistent provisions or zoning) that need to be considered. Earthworks, genetically modified organisms and vegetation clearance are likely candidates. Given the resource management reform, we suggest looking at aligning the more generic district plan rules with those of adjoining councils.
- 5.3 Another important area for cross-boundary consistency is the adoption of the key actions from the Te Taitokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy.

6. National Direction Instruments

- 6.1 The section on National Environmental Standards and Regulations omits the NES Freshwater and Livestock Exclusion Regulations. While the livestock exclusion regulations have limited implications for district plans, we suggest council reviews the draft plan in light of the NES Freshwater.
- 6.2 While the NES Freshwater relates to the functions of regional councils (not district councils), Regulation 6 sets out the relationship between district rules and the NES Freshwater. For example, district rules can be more stringent than the NES Freshwater and, in some circumstances, more lenient.
- 6.3 Of particular note will be rules for earthworks and vegetation clearance that allow these activities within 10m of natural wetlands – we note that the NES Freshwater applies non-complying activity status where earthworks and vegetation clearance are not accorded another status in the regulations.

7. Climate Change

- 7.1 We suggest a greater emphasis on response to climate change and there are climate change mitigation and adaptation responses relevant to district planning that could be set out now. Examples include greater use of mixed-use zones, enabling greater density in urban centres, prioritising horticultural land use on productive/elite soils, requiring water resilience and minimising risk from natural hazards.
- 7.2 While councils are not yet required to consider greenhouse gas emissions and climate change in their planning, these are matters that will be required to be addressed within the expected lifespan of the draft plan.
- 7.3 We would suggest strategic direction on climate change include:
 - a) A clear statement on how the district plan enables the district's communities to respond to climate change (eg. an objective could be framed along the lines of "*Kaipara District communities are prepared for the impacts of climate change and an equitable transition to a low emission economy*", and policies could include: "*Provide for development*

- 3 -

patterns that are resilient to climate change impacts” and “Support the inclusion of design features that take into account the impacts of climate change and the need to transition to a low-carbon economy in proposals for land use, subdivision and development”).

- b) Signal that zoning, overlays and controls on subdivision, use and development are used to minimise risk from natural hazards, protect high value resources that enable climate change responses or are particularly vulnerable to predicted impacts (such as indigenous biodiversity, elite soils and renewable energy generation). They also promote development patterns and land uses and associated transport/infrastructure that enable emissions reduction (such as mixed-use zoning, higher residential density in serviced areas, renewable energy generation and special purpose zoning such as horticulture).
- 7.4 We recommend that land use provisions be tested to ensure there are no undue impediments to climate change mitigation (eg. amenity-based rules on ‘reflectivity’, building height or similar that unduly limit opportunities for small to medium scale solar or wind generation).
- 7.5 We also note the actions set out in the Te Taitokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy. These actions should guide development of climate change provisions within the new district plan.

8. Resilient and Reliable Water Supply

- 8.1 Resilient and reliable water supply is another key issue now and in the long term as climate change effects increase.
- 8.2 Water resilience is a particular concern for the Kaipara district, as was highlighted in the 2019/2020 drought that exposed the vulnerability of existing supplies, primarily those that rely on ‘run of river’ and are highly unreliable during extended dry periods. We suggest this be embedded in the relevant sections of strategic direction chapter including adding drought into the District Wide Matters section on Hazards and Risks.
- 8.3 We note droughts have been assessed to have economic impact six times higher than floods – this impact will only be compounded where development is enabled without adequate water supply.
- 8.4 Where development is enabled without access to water supply networks, this puts pressure on natural waterbodies (such as aquifers and rivers) and can also place significant demand on already stressed water supply networks during extended dry periods as ‘self-suppliers’ rely on tanker deliveries.
- 8.5 We suggest signalling high intensity development will not be enabled unless serviced by a supply network or adequate on-site storage (or other alternative such as desalination plants in coastal locations) is provided to cater for extended dry spells / droughts.
- 8.6 Environmental limits (such as minimum flows/levels) mean there are constraints on takes from natural water bodies resulting in restrictions on extraction / water use required in consent conditions and / or as a result of water shortage directions - this situation is expected to worsen with climate change.
- 8.7 Recent Environment Court decisions¹ have also confirmed the need in some areas of Northland to shift to flow harvest and bulk water storage rather than relying on takes from natural waterbodies during low flows.

¹ [2021] NZEnvC 001 Minister of Conservation & Ors v Northland Regional Council

- 4 -

- 8.8 The principle of Te Mana o te Wai embedded in the NPS Freshwater Management (2020) also has implications for reliance on supply from natural waterbodies in that it establishes a hierarchy where the health and wellbeing of waterbodies comes first (with the needs of people second).
- 8.9 The lack of water supply networks in coastal settlements particularly where there is significant development pressure such as Mangawhai, means there may be more demands for groundwater. Coastal aquifers can be sensitive to extraction (often being small and vulnerable to saltwater intrusion).
- 8.10 Extraction from these aquifers is subject to limits to protect the resource and prevent saltwater intrusion – settlements in these areas can place demand on the resource, particularly over summer when population increases. Sea level rise will exacerbate the saltwater intrusion issue and we recommend that KDC require adequate on-site storage based on intended use (or suitable alternative) in new subdivisions and on every new build in areas where seasonal water restrictions have become the norm and in settlements on at risk aquifers.
- 8.11 We also recommend low impact stormwater design be mandatory for new development in these locations to ensure recharge is maintained (eg. a requirement in engineering standards to use swales instead of kerb and channel). We recommend Policy be added into the subdivision section to make this explicit for example:
- “Where subdivision and development is proposed for coastal locations where groundwater resources are already fully or close to being fully allocated or at risk from saltwater intrusion, that on-site storage or suitable alternative is required, including low impact stormwater designs.”*
- 8.12 Greywater recycling and separation systems should also be considered for all new builds (particularly targeting those areas already connected to existing wastewater treatment plants where additional treatment capacity is limited so that increases in load and volumes are reduced over time) and to encourage retrofit to existing buildings where possible.

9. Zoning

- 9.1 We understand a spatial planning approach has been undertaken to provide underlying guidance as to which are the most appropriate zonings across the district, by excluding those areas where more intensive development and subdivision should be restricted due to constraints such as highly versatile soils, flood and coastal hazards, ONLs and ONFs, historic/cultural heritage sites and areas. This is particularly important as the draft plan almost doubles the amount of residential, commercial and industrial zoned land.
- 9.2 Enabling further development in areas prone to flooding is at odds with direction in the RPS Policy 7.1.2 (New subdivision and land use within 10-year and 100-year flood hazard areas) and Method 7.1.7 – in particular method 7.1.7(6).
- 9.3 In summary these RPS provisions seek to avoid an increase in risk and discourage subdivision, built development and storage of hazardous substances in hazard zones – especially where rezoning land to more intensive use in hazard prone areas is proposed. It can also create demand for flood mitigation schemes/works over a comparatively large area which is expensive and can create affordability issues. We suggest revising the extent of the new zoning that provides for intensification in areas prone to natural hazards unless the change reduces vulnerability to risk. It appears that some areas with potential flood hazards have been up-zoned to allow more intensive development. Applying a hazard overlay does not fully address this issue as the underlying zoning can create a development expectation.

- 5 -

- 9.4 Further to the above, any such re-zoning without three waters infrastructure is also an issue in the long term – retrofitting networks to service such sites can be problematic and more costly than establishment at the ‘greenfield’ stage. This is especially so where existing development has already established on-site services (eg. wastewater disposal and water storage) but would need to pay to connect to new network services.
- 9.5 We support mixed use zoning as this can provide opportunities to work and live in the same area, reducing the need for travel and associated GHG emissions. Again, these areas should be serviced by three waters infrastructure given the development intensity provided.
- 9.6 Large Lot Residential Zone and Settlement Zone – both zones would enable reasonably small lots 1000m² as a restricted discretionary activity for reticulated site and 3000m² for non-reticulated sites typically on the margins of existing settlements. However, many subdivisions in these areas are unlikely to have access to reticulated water supply and will therefore rely on roof collection and storage and / or groundwater. This presents some risk that dwellings in these areas will rely on networks for water during extended dry periods / drought (ie. tanker deliveries) or will seek to use groundwater.
- 9.7 As noted above there are some concerns around additional development on aquifers, particularly coastal aquifers. We recommend engineering standards be revised to support the district plan to ensure low impact stormwater design and adequate potable water storage are required, especially for development on aquifers and recharge areas. We understand the rationale for consolidation but recommend that provisions be applied in all such ‘un-serviced’ residential zones requiring adequate water supply (whether storage or otherwise) for potable use and firefighting. We’d be happy to discuss what these requirements may be but suggest a minimum of 50,000 litres of on-site water storage per dwelling.
- 9.8 We would recommend rural residential zoning (and other urban type zones) avoid stagnation of ‘elite’ soils (ie. Class 1-4) that are a productive resource – particularly in areas with water supply that have significant production potential. Further direction on this will be provided for in the soon to be released NPS-Highly Productive Land.
- 9.9 In general, the subdivision standards across the zones appear to be more permissive than those provided for in the Far North District plan and we suggest aiming for consistency between the districts.
- 9.10 Environmental Benefit lots allow for additional development potential where wetlands or significant vegetation is permanently protected. We suggest areas of erosion prone land could also be considered as an environmental benefit where these areas are retired from production and appropriate measures taken to stabilise them. For example, Whangārei District Council provides an environmental benefit credit where 4ha of erosion prone land is protected (Refer WDC District Plan SUB-R15). Such an approach would complement both NRC soil conservation efforts and the aims of the Kaipara Moana Programme to reduce sediment loads to fresh and coastal waters. We would be happy to work with you on these provisions, eg. providing maps of erosion prone land and defining suitable protection / restoration of erosion prone land.
- 10. Natural Hazards**
- 10.1 We support the adoption of NRC’s updated natural hazards maps and the rules frameworks in the draft district plan appear reasonably well aligned with direction in the RPS on management of natural hazards.

- 6 -

11. Highly Productive Land

- 11.1 The government is due to release the NPS for Highly Productive Land before the end of the year. In order to consider the availability of such land for primary production now and into the future, NRC recommends that the council carefully consider what mechanisms it is going to put in place to protect the Class 1, 2 and 3 (and possibly some class 4) soils of the district as a valuable natural resource. This could include some simple solutions such as restricting subdivision on highly productive soils (ie. mapping these and applying a larger discretionary minimum lot size than normally available). As a minimum we'd recommend only applying Rural Production or General Rural zoning to large tracts of highly productive soils, and where appropriate encouraging lifestyle / rural residential development on poorer soils with supporting infrastructure (roading, water supply, waste and stormwater).
- 11.2 We note the recently released MfE report *Our Land 2021*² found that the area of highly productive land that was unavailable for agriculture (because it had a house on it) increased by 54 percent between 2002 and 2019, while the area of residential land outside city boundaries more than doubled during that period.
- 11.3 We'd also recommend objectives and policies the subdivision section be strengthened to strongly discourage fragmentation of highly productive soils (although we acknowledge this content is likely best developed following the release of the NPS for Highly Productive Land). We also suggest in principle and where practicable, zoning for development be directed to poorer soils where transport and other infrastructure can be provided to support it.

12. Biodiversity / Significant Natural Areas

- 12.1 We note the draft plan does not include provisions on ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity and instead will develop these based on the NPS-IB once this has been finalised. While we understand this position, we suggest KDC anticipate the requirement to map SNA's and the provision in the draft NPS requiring SNAs to be identified, mapped and scheduled within 5 years of commencement. It would be prudent to begin work on this project as soon as possible. We encourage meaningful engagement with tangata whenua and local communities as part of this process.
- 12.2 Working with landowners will be key to achieving mapping that is sufficiently nuanced and at the appropriate scale to accurately reflect the SNAs on the ground and will be critical to achieving community acceptance. NRC is happy to offer assistance where this would be helpful.

13. Outstanding Natural Landscapes, Features & Character and the Coastal Environment

- 13.1 NRC fully supports the inclusion of the ONLs, NCAs, ONFs and the Coastal Environment in the draft plan. The provisions look to be reasonably well-aligned with direction in the RPS (although we have not reviewed the maps).
- 13.2 We note however that there is potential for unintended consequences of the rules in the Coastal Environment, ONLs and ONFs. For example, vegetation clearance for a new fence is not a permitted within the Coastal Environment, an ONL or ONF. Rules CE-R4, CE-R5, CE-R11 only provide for repair and maintenance of existing fences – rather than permitting new fences for livestock exclusion, or protection of SNA or natural character areas. One of the key mechanisms for improving water quality, which is a top priority for the nation, is to encourage the fencing of

² <https://environment.govt.nz/assets/Publications/our-land-2021.pdf>

- 7 -

waterbodies and waterways to exclude stock. The construction of fencing for this purpose is provided for in both the Stock Exclusion Regulations and the NES-Freshwater. Landowners may be discouraged from doing so if they are required to apply for a discretionary consent. We suggest that one option would be to expand the permitted activity rule to allow for fencing within natural character areas, ONLs and ONFs where fencing is required for protection or enhancement of water bodies and wetlands and in line with the Stock Exclusion Regulations and/or regional plan rules.

14. Energy, Infrastructure & Transport

- 14.1 NRC supports the inclusion of a chapter on renewable electricity generation and KDC's intentionally enabling approach to this.
- 14.2 Renewable energy provisions need to recognise that some forms of renewable energy (such as wind speeds required for larger-scale wind farms for example) are limited geographically and may be location specific in the same way in which mineral resources or highly versatile soils are.
- 14.3 We also note that as the nation shifts to a low carbon economy, the need for our Northland communities to maximise their use of renewable energy sources for electricity generation within the next decade will become paramount and we recommend careful consideration of the provisions which must enable this access. This could include, for example, a requirement for provision of e-recharging stations for vehicles within developments which are easier to install as development happens and are more difficult and costly to retrofit later.

15. Historical and Cultural Values

- 15.1 The section on 'Sites and areas of significance to Māori' could be strengthened to better reflect the status of Māori as Treaty partner. Appropriate clauses could include a policy on when an assessment of cultural impacts is required and what this should cover.
- 15.2 Greater emphasis could be given to demonstrate the importance council places on cultural values, and that ensures that landowners and developers understand that the professional input of tangata whenua should be considered as any other professional expertise (eg. ecologists or engineers).

16. Overlap with regional rules/functions

- 16.1 There appears to be some overlap between the earthwork's provisions in the draft plan and the Proposed Regional Plan (for example see Proposed Plan rule C.8.3.1). This becomes problematic (and potentially costly) for applicants. For example, rules EW-S1, EW-S2 and EW-S3 seem to delve into regional council functions such as dust discharges to air and sediment and erosion control – this duplicates Proposed Regional Plan requirements for earthworks.
- 16.2 As noted above the matter is not simple given the rules are for different purposes and the NES Freshwater also complicates matters. However, it may be possible to defer to regional rules for setbacks from waterbodies, sediment and erosion controls etc leaving the district plan to manage the more obvious s31 RMA functions (ie. noise, traffic, visual amenity, nuisance and stability etc).
- 16.3 The relationship between district and regional rules is complex – we'd suggest a discussion on the best way forward. Given resource management system reform is likely to materially

- 8 -

influence this issue it would seem logical to undertake this jointly with the other district councils in Northland.

17. Production Forestry and Carbon Farming

- 17.1 The draft plan contains controls relating to new production forestry within the Coastal environment and Natural character areas. However, we note that the definition of Production forestry does not include exotic forest intended for long term carbon capture ("carbon farming") as this does not result in harvesting of the timber.
- 17.2 There are potential effects associated with carbon farming such as lack of fire breaks, closer planting spaces and resulting difficulty in pest management as well as those normally associated with production forestry such as amenity and visual effects, wilding pine and fire risk.
- 17.3 We suggest the council consider including controls on exotic carbon forestry within the coastal environment, natural character areas, ONFL and areas of elite soils to protect the values of these resources and to manage nuisance such as shading, plant pest spread and fire risk. However, we recognise that permanent forest cover may be appropriate in areas of highly erodible land and the plan should not unduly restrict this.

18. Conclusion

- 18.1 We appreciate the effort and significant background work that goes into preparation of a new district plan, and we congratulate the Kaipara District Council on the progress made to date. We have attempted to highlight some areas in this feedback where we see room to improve. We look forward to seeing these addressed in the notified version. We would also like to reiterate the benefits of working and together and NRC's willingness to provide technical assistance where needed.



Ben Lee
Policy and Planning Manager
NORTHLAND REGIONAL COUNCIL



Submission on the Proposed Far North District Plan

From: Northland Regional Council

Attn: Greg Wilson
Manager – District Planning
Far North District Council

NRC Contact: Ingrid Kuindersma
Policy Planner
ingridk@nrc.govt.nz

1. Northland Regional Council (NRC) welcomes the opportunity to submit on the Proposed Far North District Plan (proposed plan). This feedback is made in the interests of sustainable management of natural and physical resources within the Far North district and the Northland region. We note that some of the issues have previously been raised in our feedback on the draft plan and they are repeated in this submission where they are still considered relevant.
2. NRC has reviewed the proposed plan against the following overriding principles:
 - The need for district plans to assist district councils to carry out their functions to achieve the purpose of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA), and
 - The need for district plans to 'give effect to' national and regional policy statements and to not be inconsistent with regional plans, and
 - NRC's statutory obligations, roles and functions under the RMA as well as other Acts, including the Local Government Act 2002.
3. The submission is also framed in the context of our community outcomes as set out in the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan:
 - Healthy waters for the environment and our people
 - Resilient, adaptable communities in a changing climate
 - Safe and effective transport networks connecting our region
 - Meaningful partnerships with tangata whenua
 - Protected and flourishing native life
 - A strong and sustainable regional economy

Our Submission

4. Overall Structure

- 4.1 The draft plan appears to align well with the format set out in the National Planning Standards and the e-plan functionality is straightforward to navigate. The district plan map viewer functions work well.



Private Bag 9021, Te Mai, Whangarei 0143

- 2 -

5. Cross-Boundary Matters

- 5.1 There are often difficulties in ensuring marine activities have the supporting land-based facilities required - an example is providing appropriate services for mooring areas / commercial wharves (such as public access, parking and waste facilities). We suggest the cross-boundary matters section be complemented by policy in the coastal environment and infrastructure sections that seek subdivision, land use and development that is compatible with and where practicable complements use / activity in the coastal marine area.
- 5.2 There are likely to be cross-boundary issues relating to jurisdictional boundaries with adjoining councils (eg. incompatible / inconsistent provisions or zoning) that need to be considered. Earthworks, genetically modified organisms and vegetation clearance are likely candidates. Given the resource management reform we suggest looking at aligning the more generic district plan rules with those of adjoining councils.

6. National Direction Instruments

- 6.1 We note that the NPS-Highly Productive Land will, and the NPS-Indigenous Biodiversity is likely to, take effect prior to the end of 2022 and the proposed plan will need to be reviewed in light of these new pieces of national direction.

7. Climate Change

- 7.1 We suggest a greater emphasis on response to climate change. There are climate change mitigation and adaptation responses relevant to district planning that could be set out now. We support the greater use of mixed-use zones and enabling greater density in urban centres subject to appropriate requirements for water resilience and minimising risk from natural hazards.
- 7.2 While councils are not yet required to consider greenhouse gas emissions and climate change in their planning, these are matters that will be required to be addressed within the expected lifespan of the plan.
- 7.3 We would suggest strategic direction on climate change include:
- a) A clear statement on how the district plan enables the district's communities to respond to climate change (eg. an objective could be framed along the lines of *"Far North District communities are prepared for the impacts of climate change and an equitable transition to a low emission economy"*, and policies could include: *"Provide for development patterns that are resilient to climate change impacts"* and *"Support the inclusion of design features that take into account the impacts of climate change and the need to transition to a low-carbon economy in proposals for land use, subdivision and development"*).
 - b) Signal that zoning, overlays and controls on subdivision, use and development are used to minimise risk from natural hazards, protect high value resources that enable climate change responses or are particularly vulnerable to predicted impacts (such as indigenous biodiversity, elite soils and renewable energy generation). They also promote development patterns and land uses and associated transport / infrastructure that enable emissions reduction (such as mixed-use zoning, higher residential density in serviced areas, renewable energy generation and special purpose zoning such as horticulture).
- 7.4 We recommend that land use provisions be tested to ensure there are no undue impediments to climate change mitigation (eg. amenity-based rules on 'reflectivity', building height or similar that unduly limit opportunities for small to medium scale solar or wind generation).

- 3 -

- 7.5 We also note the actions set out in the Te Taitokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy. These actions should guide development of climate change provisions within the new district plan.
- 7.6 Recent updates from the Ministry for the Environment indicate that sea level is rising faster than anticipated. The Proposed Plan should therefore consider the potential for updating of NRC hazard maps and working with NRC to reflect new understanding of the issue.

8. Resilient and reliable water supply

- 8.1 Resilient and reliable water supply is another key issue now and in the long term as climate change effects increase.
- 8.2 Water resilience is a particular concern for the Far North district, as was highlighted in the 2019/2020 drought that exposed the vulnerability of existing supplies, primarily those that rely on 'run of river' and are highly unreliable during extended dry periods. We suggest this be embedded in the relevant sections of strategic direction chapter. We note drought is included in the District Wide Matters section on Hazards and Risks but feel the significance of these issues could be more strongly highlighted.
- 8.3 We note droughts have been assessed to have economic impact six times higher than floods – this impact will only be compounded where development is enabled without adequate water supply.¹
- 8.4 Where development is enabled without access to water supply networks this puts pressure on natural waterbodies (such as aquifers and rivers) and can also place significant demand on already stressed water supply networks during extended dry periods as 'self-suppliers' rely on tanker deliveries.
- 8.5 We suggest signalling high intensity development will not be enabled unless serviced by a supply network or adequate on-site storage is provided to cater for extended dry spells / droughts
- 8.6 Environmental limits (such as minimum flows / levels and allocation limits) mean there are constraints on takes from natural water bodies resulting in restrictions on extraction / water use in consent conditions and/or as a result of water shortage directions - this situation is expected to worsen with climate change.
- 8.7 Recent Environment Court decisions² have also confirmed the need for some areas of Northland to shift to flow harvest and bulk water storage rather than relying on takes from natural waterbodies during low flows.
- 8.8 The principle of Te Mana o Te Wai embedded in the NPS Freshwater Management (2020) also has implications for reliance on supply from natural waterbodies in that it establishes a hierarchy where the health and wellbeing of waterbodies comes first (with the needs of people second).
- 8.9 The lack of water supply networks in coastal settlements, particularly where there is significant development pressure, means there may be more demands for groundwater. Coastal aquifers can be sensitive to extraction (often being small and vulnerable to saltwater intrusion).
- 8.10 Extraction from these aquifers is subject to limits to protect the resource and prevent saltwater intrusion – settlements in these areas can place demand on the resource, particularly over summer when population increases. Sea level rise will exacerbate the saltwater intrusion issue and we recommend that FNDC require adequate on-site storage based on intended use (or

¹ <https://www.treasury.govt.nz/sites/default/files/2018-08/LSF-estimating-financial-cost-of-climate-change-in-nz.pdf>

² [2021] NZEnvC 001 Minister of Conservation & Ors v Northland Regional Council

- 4 -

suitable alternative) in new subdivisions and on every new build in areas where seasonal water restrictions have become the norm and in settlements on at-risk aquifers.

- 8.11 We also recommend low impact stormwater design be mandatory for new development to ensure recharge is maintained (e.g. a requirement in engineering standards to use swales instead of kerb and channel). We recommend policy be added into the subdivision section to make this explicit for example:

“Where subdivision and development is proposed for coastal locations, that on-site storage or suitable alternative is required, including low impact stormwater designs.”

9. Zoning

- 9.1 We understand a constraints mapping approach has been undertaken to provide underlying guidance as to which are the most appropriate zonings across the district, by excluding those areas where more intensive development and subdivision should be restricted due to constraints such as highly versatile soils, flood and coastal hazards, ONLs and ONFs, historic / cultural heritage sites and areas.
- 9.2 The proposed maps appear to re-zone a number of areas to provide greater development intensity in areas at risk from natural hazards or that are un-served (eg. lack three waters infrastructure). For example, an area of land at Waipapa is shown to be re-zoned from Rural Production to Heavy and Light Industrial – we note a significant portion of the land identified as Light Industrial is flood prone (with areas in 1-in-10 and 1-in-100-year flood hazard areas) as are the margins of the new area of Heavy Industrial zone. While we recognise there is already commercial development and zoning in place over part of this area, we do not support further intensification in flood plains given storm / flood events are predicted to intensify with climate change.
- 9.3 Enabling further development in areas prone to flooding is at odds with direction in the RPS Policy 7.1.2 (New subdivision and land use within 10 year and 100 year flood hazard areas) and Method 7.1.7 – in particular method 7.1.7(6).
- 9.4 In summary, these RPS provisions seek to avoid an increase in risk and discourage subdivision, built development and storage of hazardous substances in hazard zones – especially where rezoning land to more intensive use in hazard prone areas is proposed. It can also create demand for flood mitigation schemes/works over a comparatively large area which is expensive and can create affordability issues. We suggest ensuring the extent of the new zoning that provides for intensification avoids areas prone to natural hazards unless the change reduces vulnerability to risk.
- 9.5 Further to the above, any such re-zoning without three waters infrastructure is also an issue in the long term – retrofitting networks to service such sites can be problematic and more costly than establishment at the ‘greenfield’ stage. This is especially so where existing development has already established on-site services (eg. wastewater disposal and water storage) but would need to pay to connect to new network services. Without access to appropriate servicing there are major limitations on the density and type of urban development which can be accommodated in these zones.
- 9.6 NRC supports the creation of zones for horticulture use and processing and the rationale being to protect the productive capacity of areas around Kerikeri and Waipapa, especially given soil quality and water supply available to support such use and the pressure from fragmentation and reverse sensitivity. We see this as being consistent with direction in the NPS for Highly Productive Land. However, we note controlled activity lot size for subdivision in the

- 5 -

Horticulture zone is 10ha and discretionary activity lot size is 4ha. Given the proximity to Waipapa and Kerikeri, demand for lifestyle blocks in these areas is likely to be high and we suggest that larger minimum lot sizes and/or more restrictive activity status for development would provide better protection for these areas.

- 9.7 There has also been significant expansion of horticulture on the Aupōuri Peninsula and in the Awanui area, primarily for avocado growing – supported in a large part by groundwater resources. There could be justification for including these areas in the Horticultural Zone.
- 9.8 Another area we consider should be zoned for horticulture, given geography and water supply, is the service catchment of the mid-north water storage project near Kaikohe. The Matawii dam is currently under construction and will supply reliable water to support a shift to horticultural / arable use – we strongly recommend rezoning to manage potential for reverse sensitivity and to support land use change which is likely to have economic, employment and greenhouse gas emissions reduction benefits.
- 9.9 Providing for subdivision down to 4ha in the Horticulture zone has potential to fragment highly productive land (eg. enable lifestyle / rural residential use) and compromise objectives to avoid reverse sensitivity issues (spray use is a particular concern and generates a significant number of incidents for NRC). We suggest any subdivision resulting in lots sizes below 10ha should trigger a non-complying activity status consistent with Section 3.8 of NPS-HPL “Avoiding subdivision of highly productive land”.
- 9.10 Reverse sensitivity is also a concern in Rural Production areas – from NRC’s perspective, agrichemical use, burning / smoke and odour are frequent issues. We recommend FNDC consider strengthening reverse sensitivity provisions, especially where lifestyle / rural residential development occurs within or adjoins Rural Production, mineral extraction, Industrial zones and significant infrastructure. Provisions to consider requiring greater setbacks of potentially up to 100m for habitable buildings within production zones, appropriate visual and physical screening and limitations on intensity of noise sensitive activities.
- 9.11 We support mixed use zoning as this can provide opportunities to work and live in the same area, reducing the need for travel and associated GHG emissions. Again, these areas should be serviced by three waters infrastructure given the development intensity provided.
- 9.12 Māori Purpose and Treaty Settlement zones - we fully support the identification of and specific zoning for Māori land (under Te Ture Whenua Act) and land returned through Treaty Settlement as cultural or commercial redress. However, we recommend that the provisions relating to the use and subdivision of these zones (eg. Policy NFL-P5) be reviewed to ensure that they do not unnecessarily restrict the intent for the use of such land (for example land returned as commercial redress should not be limited to ‘ancestral’ use where it is in an ONL or ONF) especially as there is no definition of what constitutes ‘ancestral’ use.
- 9.13 Environmental Benefit lots allow for additional development potential where wetlands or significant vegetation is permanently protected. We suggest areas of erosion prone land could also be considered as an environmental benefit where these areas are retired from production and appropriate measures taken to stabilise them. For example, Whangārei District Council provides an environmental benefit credit where 4ha of erosion prone land is protected (Refer WDC District Plan SUB-R15). Such an approach would complement NRC soil conservation efforts to reduce sediment loads to fresh and coastal waters. We would be happy to work with you on these provisions, eg. providing maps of erosion prone land and defining suitable protection / restoration of erosion prone land.

- 6 -

10. Natural Hazards

- 10.1 We support the adoption of NRC's updated natural hazards maps and the rules framework in the proposed district plan appear reasonably well aligned with direction in the RPS on management of natural hazards. However, we suggest a review of zoning to better reflect hazard related constraints on development. It appears that some areas with potential flood hazards allow for intensive development. Applying a hazard overlay does not fully address this issue as the underlying zoning can create a development expectation. This is of particular concern for industrial zones with the potential for hazardous chemical storage, but is also relevant to sensitive activities such as residential development, education facilities, visitor accommodation etc.

11. Highly Productive Land

- 11.1 The government has now released the NPS for Highly Productive Land. In order to consider the availability of such land for primary production now and into the future, NRC recommends that the council carefully consider what mechanisms it is going to put in place to protect the Class 1, 2 and 3 (and possibly some class 4) soils of the district as a valuable natural resource. This could include some simple solutions such as restricting subdivision on highly productive soils (ie. mapping these and applying a larger discretionary minimum lot size than normally available). We recognise the use of Horticulture Zoning as a valuable means of providing protection for highly productive land. For areas outside this zone, we recommend applying a minimum of Rural Production or General Rural zoning to large tracts of highly productive soils, and where appropriate encouraging lifestyle / rural residential development on poorer soils with supporting infrastructure (roading, water supply, waste and stormwater).
- 11.2 We note the recently released MfE report *Our Land 2021*³ found that the area of highly productive land that was unavailable for agriculture (because it had a house on it) increased by 54% between 2002 and 2019, while the area of residential land outside city boundaries more than doubled during that period.
- 11.3 We recommend objectives and policies in the subdivision section be strengthened to strongly discourage fragmentation of rural land as this can limit the viability of surrounding farming units and lead to high costs to service these developments. This is of particular concern for highly productive soils and should be based on the provisions in the NPS-HPL. The Regional Policy Statement for Northland does not fully reflect the direction in the NPS-HPL with regard to the protection of productive land. Therefore, it is considered appropriate to take direction from the NPS-HPL.

12. Outstanding Natural Landscapes, Features & Character and the Coastal Environment

- 12.1 RC fully supports the inclusion of the ONLs, NCAs, ONFs and the Coastal Environment in the proposed plan. The provisions look to be reasonably well-aligned with direction in the RPS (although we have not reviewed the maps).
- 12.2 We note, however, that there is potential for unintended consequences of the rules in the Coastal Environment, ONLs and ONFs. For example, vegetation clearance for a new fence is not a permitted within the Coastal Environment, an ONL or ONF. Rule NFL-R2 provides for repair and maintenance of existing fences – rather than permitting new fences for livestock exclusion, or protection of SNA or natural character areas. One of the key mechanisms for improving water quality, which is a top priority for the nation, is to encourage the fencing of erosion prone land, waterbodies and waterways to exclude stock. The construction of fencing for this purpose

³ <https://environment.govt.nz/assets/Publications/our-land-2021.pdf>

- 7 -

is provided for in both the Stock Exclusion Regulations and the NES-Freshwater. Landowners may be discouraged from doing so if they are required to apply for a consent. We suggest that one option would be to expand the permitted activity rule to allow for fencing within natural character areas, ONLs and ONFs where fencing is required for protection or enhancement of soil conservation treatments, water bodies and wetlands and in line with the Stock Exclusion Regulations and/or regional plan rules.

13. Energy, Infrastructure & Transport

- 13.1 NRC supports the inclusion of a chapter on renewable electricity generation and FNDC's generally enabling approach to this.
- 13.2 Renewable energy provisions need to recognise that some forms of renewable energy (such as wind speeds required for larger-scale wind farms for example) are limited geographically and may be location specific in the same way in which mineral resources or highly versatile soils are.
- 13.3 We also note that as the nation shifts to a low carbon economy, the need for our Northland communities to maximise their use of renewable energy sources for electricity generation within the next decade will become paramount and we recommend careful consideration of the provisions which must enable this access. This could include, for example, a requirement for provision of e-recharging stations for vehicles within developments which are easier to install as development happens and are more difficult and costly to retrofit later.

14. Historical and Cultural Values

- 14.1 The section on 'Sites and areas of significance to Māori' could be strengthened to better reflect the status of Māori as a Treaty partner. Appropriate clauses could include a policy on when an assessment of cultural impacts is required and what this should cover.
- 14.2 Greater emphasis could be given to demonstrate the importance council places on cultural values, and that ensures that landowners and developers understand that the professional input of tangata whenua should be considered as any other professional expertise (e.g. ecologists or engineers).

15. Definitions – Three waters infrastructure

- 15.1 The definition only applies (as drafted) to council owned infrastructure. We would suggest future-proofing this given the three waters reform as these services are likely to be owned and operated by 'three waters water entities' in the medium term (potable, wastewater and stormwater systems). The definition should consider those used in the Water Services Bill and refer to networks available for connection to private property. This definition needs to be considered carefully in light of the rules which then apply, for example CE-P5.

16. Overlap with regional rules/functions

- 16.1 There appears to be some overlap between the earthwork's provisions in the proposed plan and the Proposed Regional Plan (eg. Proposed Plan Rule C.8.3.1). This becomes problematic (and potentially costly) for applicants. For example, the matters for discretion seem to delve into regional council functions such as dust discharges to air and sediment and erosion control – this duplicates Proposed Regional Plan requirements for earthworks.
- 16.2 As noted above, the matter is not simple given the rules are for different purposes and the NES Freshwater also complicates matters. However, it may be possible to defer to regional rules for setbacks from waterbodies, sediment and erosion controls etc. leaving the district plan to

- 8 -

manage the more obvious s31 RMA functions (ie. noise, traffic, visual amenity, nuisance and stability etc).

- 16.3 The relationship between district and regional rules is complex – we would suggest a discussion on the best way forward. Given resource management system reform is likely to materially influence this issue it would seem logical to undertake this jointly with the other district councils in Northland.

17. Production Forestry and Carbon Farming

- 17.1 The proposed plan contains controls relating to new production forestry within the Coastal environment, ONLs, ONFs and natural character areas. However, we note that the definition of Production forestry does not include exotic forest intended for long term carbon capture (“carbon farming”) as this does not result in harvesting of the timber.
- 17.2 There are potential effects associated with carbon farming such as lack of fire breaks, closer planting spaces and resulting difficulty in pest management as well as those normally associated with production forestry such as amenity and visual effects, wilding pine and fire risk.
- 17.3 We suggest the council consider including controls on exotic carbon forestry within the coastal environment, natural character areas, ONFL and areas of elite soils to protect the values of these resources and to manage nuisance such as shading, plant pest spread and fire risk. However, we recognise that permanent forest cover may be appropriate in areas of highly erodible land and the plan should not unduly restrict this.

18. Conclusion

- 18.1 We appreciate the effort and significant background work that goes into preparation of a new district plan, and we congratulate the Far North District Council on the progress made. We have attempted to highlight some areas where we see room to improve. We look forward to seeing these addressed. We would also like to reiterate the benefits of working together and NRC’s willingness to provide technical assistance where needed.



Ben Lee
Policy and Planning Manager
NORTHLAND REGIONAL COUNCIL

TITLE: Health and safety report

From: Beryl Steele, Human Resources Manager

Authorised by Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services, on 15
Group Manager/s: November 2022

Whakarāpopototanga / Executive summary

This report is to inform the council of the activity in Health and Safety for the period July - September 2022.

An overview/summary of the report includes:

- A new Health and Safety Advisor is due to start in October. Not having this role filled has had a significant impact on the health and safety work programme.
- Health and safety inductions for new staff are still below expected targets.
- Incidents of staff speeding remain the highest reported incidents.
- Overall numbers of incidents/hazards (excluding speeding) are trending up, however these remain low.

Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation

That the report 'Health and safety report' by Beryl Steele, Human Resources Manager and dated 25 October 2022, be received.

Background/Tuhinga

1. Health and safety performance

A summary of the health and safety performance for the period July - September 2022 is shown in Table 1 below.

- A review of health and safety systems including an audit remains on hold until the new Health and Safety Advisor starts.
- An external audit of all Health and Safety processes and policies is being scoped. This is anticipated to occur once the new Health and Safety Advisor starts.
- The numbers of completed health and safety inductions for new staff remain below performance targets. This is a combination of the target being set based on the whole H&S induction being completed in the first two days and not being booked into people's diaries. Aspects of the induction cannot always be completed within the first two days. We are now separating out the aspects that must be completed in the first two days and this part of the induction is being booked into the H&S representative's and new employee's calendars. This will see a substantial improvement in the induction figures in Table 1. Managers are fully aware that a staff member is not allowed to perform their duties until the relevant health and safety training is provided.
- Training undertaken for the period included Comprehensive First Aid, Outdoor First Aid, 4-wheel driving and electric fishing.
- There is one outstanding incident investigation from the 2021-2022 financial year. This is being handled by the Health and Safety Committee.

Table 1: Health and safety performance lead and lag indicators July 2022 to September 22

2022-2023 Financial Year	Jul-22	Aug-22	Sep-22	FY Total
% annual review of systems reviewed	0%	0%	0%	0%
Audit corrective actions identified	0	0	0	0
Workplace inspections completed	6	1	0	7
Number of vehicle events	0	0	3	3
Number of contractor events	0	0	0	0
Contractors successfully pre-engaged	1	0	0	1
H&S trainings completed (external)	19	28	3	50
New workers H&S inducted within first two days of starting	67%	33%	60%	58%
Health monitoring vaccine programmes completed				0*
Health monitoring programmes completed				0*
Incident investigations	Outstanding from previous FY	Current/underway	Completed in last 3 months	FY Total
	1	3	25	28

*Based on calendar year

2. Risk management

As of the end of September 2022, there are 90 risks listed in the NRC Health and Safety Risk Register. Table 2 below shows the top ten risks for the organisation, identified by their residual risk score. Residual risk scores are calculated after all controls have been put in place, and are between one and 25.

Risk Updates

- There have been no new risks added to the Health and Safety Risk Register since the previous reporting period.
- There have been no changes to the top ten risks over the three month period from July – September 2022.
- Extended workload/stress risk has been reviewed. It was identified that the controls/mitigation strategies are not working, and the the residual risk score has increased from nine to 12.
- The risk register is still in the process of being transferred to Promapp.

Table 2: Top ten Health and Safety risks as at 30 September 2022

Risk	Residual risk score
Working with Contractors	16
COVID-19 pandemic	16
Extended workload/stress	12
Dealing with aggressive people – psychological harm	10

Risk	Residual risk score
Workplace bullying and harassment <i>Note: This due to potential risk, not high numbers</i>	9
Sedentary work - working at computers and laptops (including both in the office, and at home)	8
Working under the influence of drugs and/or alcohol	8
Slips, trips, and falls	8
Driving motor vehicles – accident related events causing injury or other trauma	8

3. Injuries, incidents, and hazards

26 events were reported by staff for the whole of the July 2021 – September 2022 period. Additionally, 33 speeding events were reported for the same period, two from speeding tickets and the remaining picked up by Eroad units in vehicles. Figure 1 below shows injury/incident related events, as compared to hazard related events, for the previous 12 months. Note that from July 2022, speeding events have been classified as injury/incident related, rather than hazard related.

Numbers of incidents/hazards or near misses reported by staff are increasing after a slump in July, however these are still low relative to the type of work council staff undertake. Staff are continually encouraged to report minor events, as these help to build the picture of the type of work NRC engages in and help with correctly assigning the associated risks.

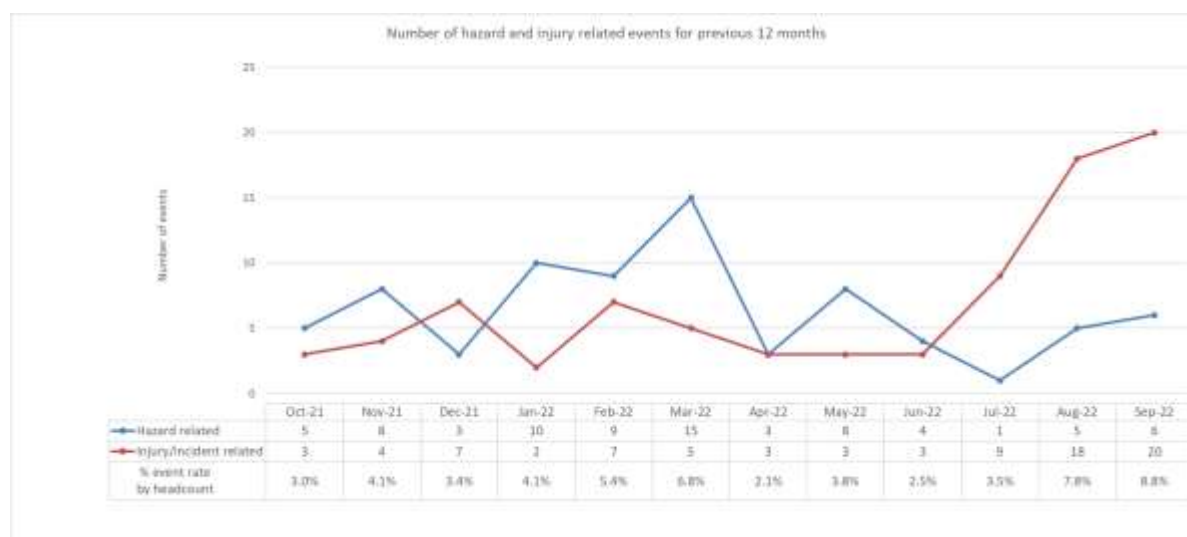


Figure 1: Number of hazard and injury/incident related events for the previous 12 months

Events reported

Incidents, hazards and near misses that are reported are assigned a risk description. Figure 2 below shows all event types (based on risk description) for the July 2021 – September 2022 quarter. The top two event types for this period, excluding speeding, were slips trips or falls and aggressive customer. The first reflects an increase in staff reporting events that occur out in the field, and is indicative of the number of staff who spend time in the field.

The second is a reflection of the number of staff in front-facing roles being encouraged to report instances of negative or difficult interactions.

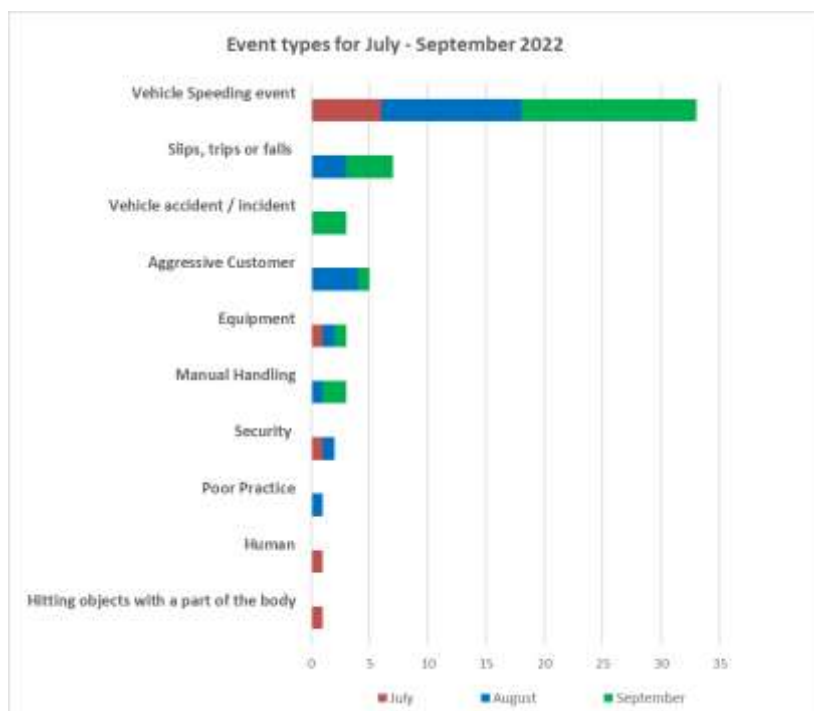


Figure 2: Event types reported for July – September 2022

Figure 3 below shows the top ten event types for the 12 month period from October 2021 – September 2022. Vehicle speeding continues to be the most common event reported. This includes speed camera tickets issued, and E-road reports where vehicles were recorded travelling over the speed limit (excluding areas where speed limits change). The Health and Safety Committee are reviewing speeding events and how they are followed up.

Note: From August 2022 onwards, E-road reports are for vehicles travelling 10+ km over the speed limit. Prior to this, reports are for vehicles travelling 20+ km over the speed limit.

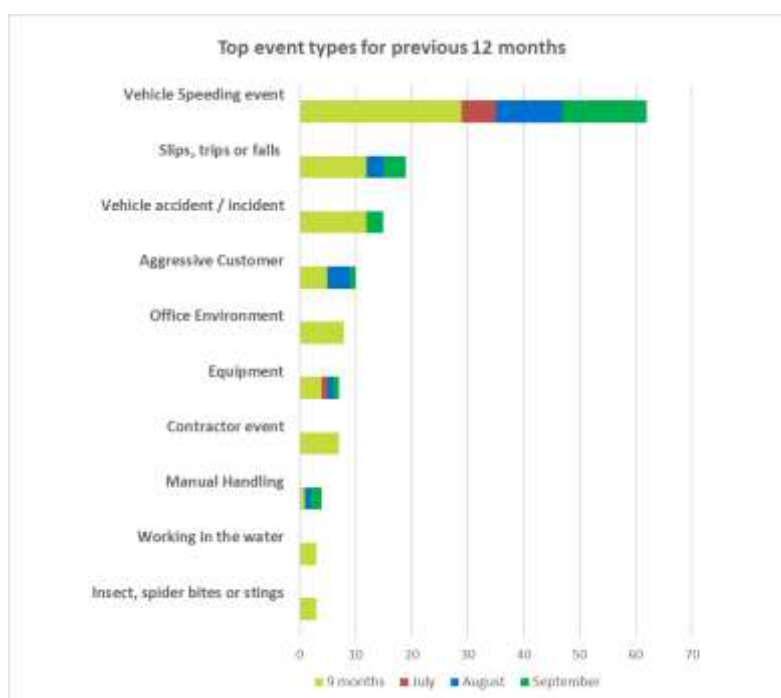


Figure 3: Top event types for previous 12 months

Events of interest

Note: the events of interest only detail high risk events, or events which affect large groups of people.

The following events are events of interest from the quarter July 2021 – September 2022.

- Regular visitors to NRC were not signing into the building. This was raised with reception and the visitors informed that they needed to sign in.
- There was one security event where a member of the public was able to access staff only areas of the Water Street building. Changes to building security and identification of staff/visitors/contractors is underway.
- Three events where staff members had difficult/aggressive phone calls with members of the public.
- Five events where field staff tripped, slipped or fell while out in the field.


4. Health and safety strategy work programme

The Health and Safety strategy work programme has been on hold in the absence of a Health and Safety Advisor. The new Health and Safety Advisor starts in October 2022 and it is expected that a work programme will be developed (with the help of the Health and Safety Committee) in the coming months.

5. Legislative changes

Nil

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: Health and safety - performance towards strategy [↓](#) 




Health and Safety Strategy priority outcomes

The health and safety committee have outlined the following five outcomes as key priorities to begin with. Each has an action plan established.

1. The organisation's culture supports wellbeing.
2. Our leaders actively model and encourage health and safety excellence. This has been combined with all our people understanding that they are responsible for their own health and safety.
3. Work related stress and mental health factors are identified and managed.
4. Near misses and incidents are triaged as soon as possible, but within 48 hours.
5. Annual health monitoring is undertaken.

Guide to strategy reporting

Traffic light colours (green, yellow, red) are used to indicate the status of an item. The meaning of each status is defined below.

Colour	Definition of Status
	Operating to plan. Targets mostly being achieved. Work tracking to agreed timeframes
	No consistent improvement, remedial actions needed. Issues managed but not overcome
	Issues/problems. Insufficient action and/or skills, resources. Timeframes not being met

Health and safety performance towards strategy

Strategy Pillar	Operating to plan	Remedial action needed	Issues/problems	Notes
Hazards and risks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Generic risk assessments are being completed/approved in field teams. Health and safety representatives (H&S Reps) were trained on how to induct new staff members and undertake low risk investigations. Numerous Health and Safety training courses have been carried out. A list of which can be seen on page 4. Floor inspections by H&S Reps are being undertaken quarterly. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not yet up to 100% of new people inducted. Process changes have been implemented to help ensure that H&S inductions are completed within the required timeframes. Emergency procedures for regional offices need updating Mobile Take 5 forms have been developed but need streamlining and dashboard needs improving The PPE Policy and PPE Catalogue is going to be reviewed again. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Risk treatments need to be completed in Promapp. Duplicate system for the risk register (spreadsheet and Promapp) creates potential misinformation. Not all annual health monitoring programme was not undertaken. Health monitoring programme to be reviewed with managers and updated. 	Inductions are not at 100% completed having H&S reps catching up on people who had not been completed. It was found that the induction included aspects that didn't need to be done in the first couple of days and yet the goal was to complete the induction in the first two days. The absolute must do tasks for the first two days are being separated out.
Injury and illness	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Most incidents are reported with 48 hours of occurrence. H&S Reps received training on how to undertake incident investigations. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Speeding is being addressed through frequent reporting and monitoring. This is however still a work in progress. It was recently decided to reduce the report of speeding from 20km/ph over the limit to 10km/ph. We will also be tracking repeat offenders. A process for H&S reps to assist in investigations was developed. Completion within a reasonable timeframe is still a work in progress. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There are still incidences of workers speeding more than 20km/h over the limit. 	
Wellbeing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wellbeing related training and activities have been carried out. The full list is on page 3. Wellbeing committees' activities are well received in the organisation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The HR SIG to allocate actions from the wellbeing meeting. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Workload and stress remain a challenge in some areas. 	

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In-house resilience and stress training is being provided. • A stress survey was carried out in November 2021 with actions being developed by ELT. • Have reviewed areas where we can stop or delay work to help reduce workload issues. • Encouraging staff to take advantage of our flexible working policy. • The wellbeing committee have develop a digital wellbeing policy. • The HR SIG met to discuss initiatives that we can do as a sector. • The wellbeing group have reviewed their strategy and action plans focusing more on activities where they can make an impact. 			
Communication and engagement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A review of the H&S area on express has been carried out so that it is easier to find information. • H&S is a standing item on the ELT agenda. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leaders and new managers need upskilling in modelling H&S. • The H&S Spotlight dropped off in the absence of a H&S Advisor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The H&S committee is working on how to better engage leaders and managers in H&S.
Learn and improve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The frequency of the Health and Safety Report has been reduced from monthly to quarterly. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Incident and risk tracking (spreadsheets) cause delay in reporting and monitoring. • After completing a contractor review with results highlighting areas for improvement it was decided to get an audit done for all H&S policies and processes. • There are a few policies due for reviewing. This will be done once a new H&S Advisor is on board. • In October and November, we will be starting the transition to enterprise. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not all contractor documentation is being filed in appropriate places – this is based on the premise that it is filed elsewhere. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An external audit is being scoped for when the H&S Advisor starts to gain insight into our systems.

Health and Safety training carried out over the '21-'22 Financial year.

- CERT Training (Situational Awareness and Tactical Communication)
- Four-wheel drive
- Outdoor first aid
- Health and safety contractor management
- Mental health 101
- Height safety awareness
- Kayak training
- Wader and water safety
- LUV training
- Emergency oxygen provider training
- Chemical handling and storage
- Fire warden
- Stage 1 H&S Rep

Wellbeing activities carried out:

- Providing soup in June: not only encourages healthy eating and a bit of winter warmth but also supports the “giving” pillar of wellbeing model
- Focus on prioritisation and planning of work for year ahead, including digital wellbeing, physical challenges for staff, wellbeing speaker series and wellbeing training for managers
- Supporting the redevelopment of the Water Street courtyard as a space where staff can meet, connect and socialise
- Supporting admin staff to experience time in the field – build relationships, connect, get outdoors and get a better sense of belonging in terms of how they fit with the focus areas of the organisation
- Promoting and coordinating mental health workshops
- Participation and promotion of a Winter Warmer Fitness Challenge (July 2021), the Steptember challenge (September 2021), the Love to Ride Aotearoa Bike Challenge (February 2022), the Active Workplaces – Wellbeing Challenge (March/April 2022)
- Providing fruit in the canteen
- Tautoko toolkit (wellbeing resources on express for staff) 2021
- Wellbeing kits for staff working over the Christmas/New Year break
- Office competition for Christmas decorations
- Creation of a wellbeing library
- Support of Daffodil Day and Mental Health Awareness Week
- Supporting Pink Shirt Day to raise awareness of bullying and support diversity and inclusion at work
- Mental health literacy webinar in Aug 2021
- Provision of journal packs for staff

- Coordination of a COVID volunteer army to support staff while they were isolating

TITLE: Chief Executive's Report to Council

From: Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer

Authorised by Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer, on 17
Group Manager/s: November 2022

Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation

That the report 'Chief Executive's Report to Council' by Jonathan Gibbard, Tāhūhū Rangapū - Chief Executive Officer and dated 13 October 2022, be received.

8.2.1 HIGHLIGHTS

FIF Dunes Lake Project

Lake vegetation surveys were completed at Lakes Tutaki, Egg and Mt Camel North with traces of hornwort found in Tutaki and Mt Camel North. If possible, the lakes will be treated again prior to Christmas. Monitoring will continue and treatments will proceed if required next year. Various education days have been held throughout the region in the past 2 months with around 1000 students having attended since 2019. Ngā Roto Tapokapoka tūhono wānanga will take place in February 2023. Tech fishing at Lake Kapoai took place in October with 201 fish removed. An automatic fish feeder has been built to improve fishing results this summer.

CoastCare

Several CoastCare planting days were held in September and early October, closing the planting season for the year. Numerous volunteers in Bream Bay, Korou Kore, Mitimiti, Matapōuri and Taipa turned up to plant spinifex and pingao and provide protection for the dunes. The plants and materials were provided by NRC CoastCare. The focus has now moved to protecting the dunes and wildlife that live and breed in the dune sand beaches from the influx of summer visitors.

Air quality

A paper titled "Identifying Hotspots and Targeting Monitoring Locations Within Northland's Priority Airsheds" was presented at Clean Air Society of Australia and New Zealand's 26th International Clean Air and Environment Conference in Adelaide, South Australia. The paper was co-authored by council's Air Quality Scientist and Pattle Delamore Partners (PDP) and jointly presented. The presentation won the most "innovative presentation" award of the conference.

Ngāti Kuri Wānanga

Representatives from NRC hosted the Ngāti Kuri taiao unit for a three-day wānanga in Whangarei. Multiple staff from across NRC showcased the tools and techniques they use to monitor the environment. As many of the marine biosecurity activities were completed in the rohe of Patuharakeke, members from the Patuharakeke Te Iwi Trust were also invited along to participate in these activities. The wānanga concluded with discussions on how NRC staff and Ngāti Kuri can work together to co-develop a marine biosecurity work plan for their taiao unit.



Ngāti Kuri taiao kaitiaki filtering water for eDNA samples at Marsden Cove Marina

8.2.2 CEO'S OFFICE

Current Legal Proceedings

Department	Description	Status
Consent decision appeal	Two separate consent applications for replacement and new consents relating to a proposed expansion of, Doug's Opua Boat Yard in Walls Bay, Ōpua	Environment Court appeal hearing scheduled for 22-23 November 2022.
Consent decision appeal	Irrigation of avocado orchards and horticulture crops	Environment Court issued an interim decision on 7 July 2022 stating that consents could be " <i>granted with appropriate conditions</i> ". The Court directed that all parties file a memo by 28 October 2022 advising whether they have agreed to conditions, with the court to proceed to issue a full decision, or have the opportunity to provide further conditions to the court. All parties opted for the last option. The Court has agreed and directed parties to report back by mid February 2023.

8.2.3 CORPORATE SERVICES

Enterprise System Update

	Status	Notes
Timeline		Go-live of Asset Mngt is later than initially planned, however does not impact on the overall completion date of the project
Budget		Tracking according to plan
Quality		Tracking according to plan
Key:		
		Tracking according to plan
		There are challenges, but they can be addressed at project level
		There are issues that cannot be resolved at project level, need help from the project governance group

Fraud Declaration

I am not aware of any fraud nor am I investigating any incidence or suspected incidence of fraud at this time.

Council Property Update

- NIWA were able to fill the southern side of the system with seawater during the week commencing 24 October to enable commissioning to commence. Pumps are operating to expectations. The northern side was to be filled mid-November. The overall completion mid-December is still realistic assuming no major issues during commissioning. Council may be invited to invest further in the Project. The most recent H&S inspection was undertaken by Construct Health Ltd on the 4 October 2022 with a score of 96.96%.
- Council has agreed a license to occupy with KMR who will initially have up to four staff working from the Kaipara Service Centre offices.

Internal water treatment area



South elevation



Legal Proceedings

NRC has issued summary judgment proceedings against four mooring licence holders for non-payment of marine biosecurity fees. Three of the debtors have been served, with one of those proceedings/debtors coming before the Court on 25 October, where there was a challenge as to jurisdiction. The Court did not accept the debtor's challenge to jurisdiction and directed NRC's summary judgment application be set down for hearing in the District Court (date to be confirmed), noting that it would essentially be a test case for NRC's other debtor proceedings. The other three debtors/proceedings are scheduled to come before the Court for their 'first call' on 21 December 2022.

Regional Accessibility Strategy – Making Te Tai Tokerau accessible

Northland has one of the highest rates of disability combined with a high number of older adults and young children, a growing number of migrants from non-English speaking background, and a high level of illiteracy.

In May 2019, the Chief Executive Forum raised the possibility of developing a region-wide disability (now accessibility) strategy for Northland. The purpose of the strategy would be to enable people with access needs to live, work, play, visit and participate across our communities, in a more inclusive and equitable way. The community will see this mahi framed as *Making Te Tai Tokerau accessible*.

A cross-council working group, comprising staff representatives from the three district councils and NRC, have been working to advance development of an accessibility plan, which may be a strategy or other initiative. Work to date has included:

- Seeking feedback from the Disability Advisory Group, on the process of strategy/plan development and subsequent action plans.
- A survey asking people with access needs to assess how well their local council were doing to help their district be accessible. Results showed only 17% of respondents thought that councils were doing a good job at accessibility. Inadequate footpaths, insufficient public transport and lack of understanding of accessibility issues were common themes across all four councils.

- A survey to gain insight from staff across all four councils on accessibility found a strong desire to improve accessibility. However, staff felt a strong lack of guidance, support and resource on how to achieve this in their work practices.

The working group have now developed a campaign of community engagement to gather more in-depth information from access needs communities. The campaign allows the four Northland councils to collectively seek feedback on how to make Te Taitokerau more accessible for people with access needs. The campaign is focused on people with access needs rather than service providers, organisations or professional caregivers.

Four primary engagement methods are being used:

- A digital platform where people can fill out a survey, share ideas, or chat with others in an online forum.
- Guidance and feedback booklets that can be filled out by individuals or in a group. These are screen reader friendly and available in large print in plain text, Easy Read, and te reo Māori formats. The booklets are also available in NZSL via [NZSL | Infowave](#).
- Group feedback – using existing support groups for people with access needs designed to make people feel comfortable when giving feedback. These sessions will be structured around the booklets, which are designed for individuals and groups to work through.
- Limited public workshops, run on an on-demand basis.

The engagement was launched on 27 October, and will run through until the end of February.

Once the engagement has been carried out, feedback will be analysed and a plan or strategy drafted in conjunction with a group of stakeholders from the access needs community.

NRC approved funding in their 2021 Long Term Plan for implementation of a strategy, which is budgeted from 2023/24 onwards. It is anticipated that the feedback received through the engagement process will assist in determining the best use of these funds.

8.2.4 REGULATORY SERVICES

Consents in Process

During September and October 2022, a total of 309 Decisions were issued. These decisions comprised:

September 2022 (187)		October 2022 (122)	
• Moorings	4	• Coastal Permits	19
• Coastal Permits	25	• Coastal Discharge Permits	1
• Air Discharge Permits	1	• Land Discharge Permits	8
• Land Discharge Permits	18	• Land Use Consents	37
• Water Discharge Permits	2	• Water Permits	19
• Land Use Consents	98	• Water Takes	34
• Water Permits	31	• Bore Consents	4
• Water Takes	1		
• Bore Consents	7		

The processing timeframes for the September 2022 consents ranged from:

- 351 to 2 calendar days, with the median time being 53 days;
- 183 to 2 working days, with the median time being 32 days.

The processing timeframes for the October 2022 consents ranged from:

- 827 to 2 calendar days, with the median time being 71 days;
- 174 to 2 working days, with the median time being 45 days.

Thirty-nine applications were received in September 2022.

Fifty-two applications were received in October 2022.

Of the 134 applications in progress at the end of October 2022:

- 37 were received more than 12 months ago;
Reasons for being more than 12 months old:
 - Awaiting additional information (including CIAs) 8
 - Consultation with affected parties/stakeholders 7
 - On-hold pending new rules becoming operative 4
 - Other 18
- 17 were received between 6 and 12 months ago (most awaiting further information from the applicant);
- 80 less than 6 months.

Appointment of Hearing Commissioners

No commissioners were appointed in September 2022.

The following commissioners were appointed in October 2022 for one consent hearing:

- Ms Sharon McGarry and Ms Julianne Chetham for consents associated with the ongoing operation of the Kohukohu and Opononi/Ōmāpere Wastewater Treatment Plants. The hearing is scheduled for 20 February 2023.

Consents Decisions and Progress on Notified Applications in Process, Objections and Appeals

The current level of notified application processing activities at the end of October 2022 is (by number):

- Applications Publicly/Limited Notified During Previous Month 1
- Progress on Applications Previously Notified 7
- Hearings and Decisions 0
- Appeals/Objections 2

COMPLIANCE MONITORING

The results of compliance monitoring for the period 1 September – 31 October 2022 (and year-to-date figures) are summarised in the following table and discussed below.

Classification	Total	Full compliance	Low risk non-compliance	Moderate non-compliance	Significant non-compliance	Not exercised during period
Air Discharge	58	56	0	0	0	2
Bore Consent	6	5	1	0	0	0
Coastal Discharge	20	14	2	4	0	0

Classification	Total	Full compliance	Low risk non-compliance	Moderate non-compliance	Significant non-compliance	Not exercised during period
Coastal Permit	51	36	11	3	1	0
FDE – Discharge permit	183	154	0	18	5	6
FDE – Permitted activity	59	50	0	6	2	1
Land Discharge	157	127	13	7	3	7
Land Use Consent	101	86	11	0	0	4
Water Discharge	103	74	9	13	3	4
Water Permit	95	85	5	2	0	3
Water Take	192	129	25	20	0	18
Total	1025	816	77	73	14	45
Percentage		79.6%	7.5%	7.1%	1.4%	4.4%
Year to date	2231	1668	227	188	27	121
Percentage		74.8%	10.2%	8.4%	1.2%	5.4%

Coastal

There were ongoing routine coastal permit inspections of structures in the Bay of Islands. The newly approved coastal structure activity permitted rules are being implemented. Enforcement action has been taken for the placement of an illegal tyre seawall at Tinopai. Sediment and water quality monitoring of the boating club in Matauwhi Bay, the Bay of Islands boatyard (Ōpua) and Sport Northland (Hātea River) were undertaken in September and October.

Water, Waste, Air and Land Use (WWALU) Compliance Monitoring

- Contaminated Land Management*

Twelve incidents involving the discharge of hazardous substances and 25 enquiries regarding contaminated land were received and responded to. Seven hundred and five kilograms of hazardous waste was disposed of at the amnesty days, and 16 sites were added to the Selected Land-Use Register.

- Municipal Wastewater Treatment Plants*

WWTP/Consent Status	Issues (September 2022)	Enforcement Action/Response
Far North District		
Ahipara Expires 30 November 2033	Ongoing non-compliance with bacteriological consent limits	Under AN FNDC investigating land disposal options UV system to be installed in 2022/2023 to reduce bacteriological concentrations
Hihi Expires 30 November 2022; replacement consent application received	No recent issues	None currently
Kāeo	No recent issues	None currently

WWTP/Consent Status	Issues (September 2022)	Enforcement Action/Response
Expires 31 October 2022; replacement consent application received		
Kaikohe Expired 2021 (replacement consent application on hold)	Intermittent non-compliances with ADW flow, ammonia and bacteriological consent limits	None currently Issues will be addressed in replacement consent
Kaitaia Expired 2021; information for public notification of replacement consent application being finalised	No recent issues	<u>Under AN</u> (reticulation overflows) Issues will be addressed in replacement consent
Kawakawa Expires 2036	No recent issues	None currently
Kerikeri Expires 2036	No recent issues	None currently
Kohukohu Expired 2016; replacement consent application hearing scheduled for March 2023	Occasional issues with bacteriological conditions of consent	None currently
Opononi and Ōmāpere Expired 2019; replacement consent application hearing scheduled for March 2023	Non-compliances with bacteriological consent limits	<u>Under AN</u> Issues will be addressed in replacement consent
Paihia Expires 2034	Plant upgraded 2019; alkalinity issues preventing optimal ammonia treatment	None currently Alkalinity improvement project to optimise ammonia treatment still in progress
Rangiputa Expires 2032	No recent issues	None currently
Rāwene Expires 2023	System overdue for de-sludging	None currently
Russell Expires 2024	Occasional non-compliances with <i>E. coli</i> consent limit post UV	<u>Under AN</u> Infringement notices issued January 2022 and June 2022 Improvements underway
Taipā Expires 2029	No recent issues	None currently
Whatuwhiwhi Expires 2025	Elevated TSS levels (consent limit may be unnecessarily restrictive)	<u>Under AN</u> for odour from Tokerau Beach pump station
Whangarei District		
Hikurangi Expires 2025	Intermittent issues with plant performance resulting in non-compliance with water quality parameters	Plant performance being reviewed to identify improvements
Ngunguru Expires 2035	No recent issues	None currently

WWTP/Consent Status	Issues (September 2022)	Enforcement Action/Response
Okakura Expires 2025	Occasional spikes in E. coli	None currently
Portland Expires 2024	No recent issues	None currently
Ruakākā Expires 2046	No recent issues	None currently
Tutukaka Expires 2024	No recent issues	None currently
Waiotira Expires 2030	No recent issues	None currently
Waipū Expires 2030	No recent issues	None currently
Whangārei City Expired 30 April 2022; replacement consent application publicly notified; WDC awaiting response from one remaining submitter wishing to be heard	No recent issues	<u>Under AN</u> for odour from plant
Kaipara District		
Dargaville Expired 30 June 2022; decision on replacement consent application due to be released soon	Non-compliances with water quality parameters and discharge volume	<u>Under AN</u>
Glinks Gully Expires 2024	No recent issues	None currently
Kaiwaka Expired 31 October 2022; replacement consent application received; additional information being prepared prior to public notification	No recent issues	None currently
Mangawhai Expires 2042	Odour complaints and occasional exceedances of TDS consent limit	<u>Under AN</u>
Maungaturoto Expires 2032	Intermittent non-compliances generally due to high rainfall	<u>Under AN</u>
Te Kopuru Expires 2044	Intermittent minor non-compliances with water quality parameters	

Environmental Incidents

No environmental incidents closed in September and October resulted in a significant environmental impact.

ENFORCEMENT

Abatement Notices, Infringement Notices and Formal Warnings

The following is a summary of the abatement and infringement notices issued:

Action Type	Number
Abatement Notice	37
Infringement Notice	30

Farm dairy effluent (FDE) monitoring

FDE inspections commenced on 22 July 2022. NRC staff and the FDE contractor will be visiting a total of 753 farms this monitoring season (4 less than last year). To date approximately 54% of farms have been visited and reported on. Comparisons of this season's results so far with those for last season are given in the tables below.

Consented farms (571 farms)

Full Compliance		Moderate Non-Compliance		Significant Non-Compliance	
This Year	Last Year	This Year	Last Year	This Year	Last Year
271	307	55	70	13	11
80%	79%	16%	18%	4%	3%

Non-consented farms (182 farms)

Full Compliance		Moderate Non-Compliance		Significant Non-Compliance	
This Year	Last Year	This Year	Last Year	This Year	Last Year
102	106	16	27	6	7
82%	76%	13%	19%	5%	5%

Other Enforcement

- Open burning on industrial/trade property – Whangārei**
 Two charges were laid against an individual for open burning on industrial/trade premises; the burnt items included prohibited items. The defendant was convicted on both charges on 15 September 2022 and fined \$15,520.
- Breach of enforcement orders - Kaitiāia**
 On 28 June 2022, NRC commenced prosecution against an individual for the breach of enforcement orders. The enforcement orders included remedial work on a contaminated land which also required a resource consent. The resource consent application was lodged on 5 October 2022. On 18 October 2022, the defendant pledged guilty, and Judge granted adjournment to allow the defendant to complete the work required by the enforcement orders. The next court appearance is 24 January 2023 to report on the work progress and to proceed with sentencing.
- Earthworks & vegetation clearance within a wetland – Teal Bay**
 Charges were laid in the Whangareia District Court on 7 December 2021 against four parties for offences relating to earthworks, vegetation clearance and discharge of sediment that occurred in December 2020. A joint memorandum was signed on 28 June 2022 regarding one issue - whether the wetland is a natural wetland or a constructed wetland. This issue is relevant for some of the charges. Both parties' experts will attend a conference to seek resolution and the report on outcome of the conference is to be filed by 16 December 2022. The next court appearance is 24 January 2023.
- Farm dairy effluent - Hikurangi**
 Charges were laid in Whangareia District Court against four defendants for the illegal discharge of farm wastewater that occurred in November 2021. On 18 October 2022, NRC and the defendants appeared before Judge. A joint memorandum filed prior to the appearance consenting to adjournment to allow time for the defendants to review the disclosure. The next court appearance is 24 January 2023.
- Discharge of contaminated water to stormwater - Whangārei**

Charges were laid in Whangarei District Court against one defendant for offences relating to the discharge of contaminated water to a stormwater network that occurred in September 2021. On 18 October 2022, NRC and the defendant's lawyer appeared before Judge. A joint memorandum filed prior to the appearance consenting to adjournment to allow time for the defendant's lawyer to review information. The next court appearance is 24 January 2023.

8.2.5 ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES

SUBMISSIONS LODGED UNDER DELEGATED AUTHORITY

Submissions lodged under delegated authority during the month of September 2022.	
Policy and Planning	National direction for plantation and exotic carbon afforestation (Submissions closed 18 Nov 2022)

LAND MANAGEMENT

Environment fund progress

72 environment fund grants were approved late September across the following funding streams:

- Water quality and wetlands – 61 projects funding \$485,621
- Soil conservation retirement fencing – 7 projects funding \$46,184
- Regional Afforestation Grant (RAGS) – 1 project funding \$3,000
- Terrestrial biodiversity – 3 projects funding \$17,365

The Land Team is currently drafting application processes and funding criteria for the community and thangata whenua fund in order to be prepared to implement this fund over the 23-24 financial year.

Whangārei urban awa project

There has been continued interest from the last mail out with many site visits with landowners undertaken. Of these, 17 sites have had a fencer visit for quoting and more are lined up. The first of the Year 3 fencing contracts have gone out. The last two planting projects for the planting season are complete and signed off.

The year 2 annual report has been finalised with the Ministry for the Environment approving some underspend to be carried over to the Year 3. This funding will be allocated to additional fencing in year 3.

Waimā Waitai Waiora Partnership

The team has completed the target of planting 70,000 plants for the 2022 planting season and the majority of fencing has now been completed. The partnership is working towards the project close out by December 2022 in addition to looking at how they can move forward together continuing to build on the relationships that have been established through a Mana Enhancing Agreement.



Figure 1 WWW partnership holding governance hui at the Hapū Hub

Team development

Three staff from the Land Management Team were fortunate enough to attend this years NZ Association for Resource Management Conference. The conference provided staff with the opportunity to hear from Minister Parker and senior government officials as well as make connections with other council staff and rural professionals from around the country working in the catchment management space. Of particular interest were insights into the Fresh Water Farm Plan Pilot programme, MPI's On-Farm support services, and the review of the National Policy Statement for Plantation Forestry.

BIODIVERSITY

FIF Dune Lakes Project

Objective	Status
Aquatic weed control	Lake vegetation surveys were completed at Lakes Tutaki, Egg and Mt Camel North. Only one strand of hornwort was found in Lakes Tutaki and Egg. Some hornwort was found in Mt Camel North. If possible, this lake will be treated again before Christmas, along with the southern pond at Lake Tutaki. Lake Karaka on the Poutō Peninsula will be treated in February 2023. Lakes Tutaki and Egg will be surveyed again in January 2023 and if more hornwort is found, they will be treated again in February.
Education Days	The final two education days of the FIF Dune Lake project were held in September. 40 students attended an event at Lake Taharoa, where Te Roroa shared some amazing kōrero about the lake, its history, and the relationship Te Roroa has with the area. A further 87 students attended an event at Ruakākā Dune Lake, with Patuharakeke sharing with us the original name for the lake, Rotopārera. Students learned about fish, tuna, plants and water quality. These two events saw NRC partner with Te Roroa, Patuharakeke, Bream Bay Coast Care Trust and DOC. Around 1000 students have now attended one of 17 dune lake events since 2019.
Māori Partnerships	A date for Ngā Roto Tapokapoka tūhono wānanga has been set with Ngāi Takoto who will host the wānanga at Waimanoni Marae between 8-10 February 2023.
Pest fishing	Tench fishing at Lake Kapoai took place in October and 201 fish were removed.
Grass carp	An automatic fish feeder has been built to improve fishing results this summer.



Topics of discussion at the tuna station included reproduction, various life stages, and the two main species of tuna in New Zealand

CoastCare

Several CoastCare planting days were held in September and early October, closing the planting season for the year.



A working bee was held with Marsden village local residents, Bream Bay Coastal Care and Department of Conservation. Almost 30 volunteers turned up on a sunny Sunday morning to plant 1000 spinifex and pīngao and put up a fence and signs to direct people away from the planted area. The plants and materials were provided by NRC CoastCare.

The project was started by a group of local residents concerned about the dune damage from vehicles and foot traffic and the resulting dune blow-outs and movement of sand inland. Residents are keen to continue this work along the dunes in the area.

Tamariki and whanau from Ahipara School plant and weed each year on the dunes near Korou Kore Marae in Ahipara, near the school. After a year off due to Covid they were raring to go and planted 1000 spinifex in a couple of hours. Te Rūnanga o Te Rarawa provided much appreciated kai afterwards



A planting day was held at Mitimiti with Mātihetihe Marae and Te Kura o Mātihetihe. The marae and kura take their name from the tihetihe (spinifex) whose seed heads blow around the dunes in the summer. Tamariki were very enthusiastic about planting 1,000 more tihetihe in a bare area which had previously been accessed by vehicles. This area was fenced through the NRC Environment fund two years ago to enable the dune to rebuild and provide protect the marae immediately behind it.

A working bee and family fun day was held at Matapōuri with Te Whanau o Rangiwahakaahu Hapū and Department of Conservation, as part of the ongoing work to restore the dunes in the area. Weed species were removed and replaced with 500 spinifex plants. A fence was constructed to protect the plants.



Working bees were held at Taipa to finish clearing weeds from the dune area, following the final spray work for the season by contractors. The areas that were cleared were planted out with spinifex and pīngao.

Pīngao plants were also planted on the dunes at Tokerau Beach.

As summer approaches, the focus of CoastCare groups has now moved to protecting the dunes and the wildlife that live and breed in the dunes and beaches from the influx of summer visitors. Groups all around Te Taitokerau are protecting shorebird breeding areas with signage and fencing and are also participating in a data collection programme to collate all this information into one place.

CoastCare Education

Biodiversity staff members travelled to Te Tairāwhiti and Te Mahia to assist the Duffy Foundation in their quest to inspire the next generation to seek education and take on kaitiaki roles in the community. Over six days, more than 1,000 tamariki were spoken to from 14 low decile schools including whanau, hapū and iwi from Ngāti Porou and Ngāti Kahungunu.



Wetlands

Further Wetland Condition Index (WCI) monitoring visits have been carried out or are planned for the coming spring season to complete the fourth round of monitoring. Biodiversity staff have provided

advice and attended hui for riparian and wetland restoration at Waimamaku with Reconnecting Northland and hapū.

Terrestrial

- Technical advice has been provided to Planning for Regional Plan reviews for vehicle exclusion zones and significant bird areas critical habitat.
- The vegetation component for the Parihaka BioBlitz has begun, including two survey days with hapū collective Ngā Kaitiaki o Ngā Wai Māori. The collective includes representatives from Ngāti Kahu of Torongare and Te Parawhau (mana whenua of Parihaka), Ngāti Hau, Ngāti Hine and Te Uriroroi. Much knowledge was exchanged, and it was an excellent opportunity build relationship while working together.
- The Tāika Forest Biodiversity Assessment Report is complete and awaiting review.
- A planning workshop for the upcoming Ngai Takoto Predator Free 2050 nohonga was supported at Waimanoni marae, with the nohonga planned for March 2023.
- Planning is also underway to deliver several biodiversity assessments for landowners.
- Two weekend (after hours) Botanical Rambles were held locally in Pukenui and Parihaka for interested staff and others.



Parihaka Orchid Ramble. Left to right: *Bulbophyllum pygmaeum* (aka Pygmy tree orchid), *Microtis arenaria* (aka onion orchid), *Thelymitry longifolia* (aka white sun orchid, māikuku) & *Corybas oblongus* (aka spider orchid).



Pukenui weekend Botanical Ramble. Left to Right: Biosecurity staff member and her tamāhine, *Rubus cissoides* (tataramoa), *Earina mucronata* orchid (peka-a-waka).

NATURAL RESOURCES

Water Quality Operations

- Continuous dissolved oxygen loggers were deployed in monitored lakes as part of the implementation of the monitoring network review. This data will greatly increase our understanding of the ecosystem metabolism of the lakes and meet the National Policy Statement for Freshwater (NPS-FW) requirements.
- Three new staff members joined the team. Two were funded through the Long-Term Plan to deliver on National Policy Statement for Freshwater (NPS-FW) requirements and the recent review of council's State of the Environment monitoring programmes.

- The third role is externally funded through the Ministry for the Environment's Jobs for Nature. It's core focus is engaging with iwi and hapū to support their kaitiaki aspirations around water, develop environmental monitoring capacity and communicate and facilitate engagement with council's monitoring programmes. We are currently working with Ngāti Kuri (engagement with NRC programmes and monitoring capability), Ngāti Rēhia (saltwater wedge surveys, engagement with NRC programmes) and Te Rarawa (supporting their freshwater monitoring programme).
- Staff organised and/or attended a number of training sessions designed to ensure our data collection remains consistent and highest quality. This included a field visit with Auckland Council officers for consistency across our regions. Monitoring officers and freshwater scientists from both regional councils covered the technicalities of water quality, periphyton and deposited fine sediment. A team periphyton session and a saltwater wedge survey session with compliance monitoring were also undertaken.
- Preparations for the official launch of council's recreation bathing models on Safeswim on 1 December 2022 are progressing on schedule. The Communications Plan involves alignment of messaging with the other Safeswim partners and will include media and social media messaging to ensure the public are fully aware of our new predictive modelling approach.

Air quality

- An expert report on the potential adverse effects of open burning of tyres was prepared, in support of council's prosecution against an individual for the open burning of tyres and burying the remains. Open burning of tyres contravenes a National Environmental Standard for air quality and a regional rule of the Proposed Regional Plan for Northland. Burning tyres in open releases significant quantities of toxic air pollutants (carcinogenic and mutagenic) into air and produces large quantities of toxic oil, which can contaminate soil, surface, and ground water.

Coastal

- A project designed to estimate how much litter is reaching Te Tai Tokerau coastal environment through stormwater drains, has estimated that over six million items are released from the Whangārei stormwater network every year - the vast majority being plastics. A further 1.3 million items were estimated to be released from the Kerikeri stormwater network and 1 million from the Dargaville stormwater network each year. The project was part of a multi-agency response led by NRC and involved the region's three district councils, Northland District Health Board and local businesses. It involved installing and auditing the contents of 51 litter traps that were fitted in stormwater grates throughout the region at a variety of places, such as schools, playgrounds and car parks. These litter traps captured a staggering 21,000 items of litter, with plastic accounting for 71.1% of all items. Litter and plastic are one of the biggest pollutants of our oceans.



NRC and students from Taipā Area School undertook an audit of a litter trap that was installed in the school's grounds.

Te

Hiku Water Study

The aerial electromagnetic (AEM) surveying of the Aupōuri aquifer commenced on 12 October 2022 and will be completed by mid to late November 2022. This aerial survey is part of the Te Hiku Water

Study that aims to improve our understanding of the aquifer structure (e.g. depth, extent, shell beds), how the aquifer is connected to wetlands, lakes and streams and the boundary between groundwater and seawater (risk areas for salt-water intrusion). The \$3.3 million study is largely funded through Aqua Intel Aotearoa, a collaboration between Kānoa (the delivery arm of the Provincial Growth Fund) and GNS Science. Co-funding organisations include Northland Regional Council, Far North District Council, Ngai Takoto and Te Aupōuri.

The work is overseen by the Te Hiku Water Study Project Team, which includes representatives of Ngai Takoto, Ngāti Kuri, Te Aupōuri and Te Rarawa iwi, landowners and ratepayers, as well as Far North District and Northland Regional Council. The Department of Conservation is also collaborating with the study.



SkyTEM Helicopter taking off

Freshwater ecology

Scoping work to determine the distribution and abundance of nationally threatened freshwater insects in Mt Taika Forest has been completed.

Freshwater quality

The contract for procuring a GIS-based high-resolution digital river network (DRN) model for Northland (based on regional LiDAR data) is underway. The draft GIS deliverables for the Northern Wairoa catchment have been shared with the Kaipara Moana Restoration (KMR) project team. The draft GIS deliverables for the rest of the region is being internally reviewed with the final report due by February 2023.



Figure 1. An example snapshot of DRN catchments (dark grey lines) with river lines at 2ha (dark blue), and 0.2 ha (light blue) scales in Tangiterōria. Dark brown dots indicate start and end points of each river segment. The yellow jagged lines are currently available coarser catchments (i.e., NIWA river network model).

AgResearch has been contracted to undertake an up-to-date analysis of *E. coli* monitoring data to identify the key sources and underlying factors/drivers of microbial contamination in Northland Rivers and potential mitigation interventions appropriate. This work will provide valuable information to support NRC's Freshwater Plan change. The final report is expected to be delivered by March 2023.

Natural Resources Data

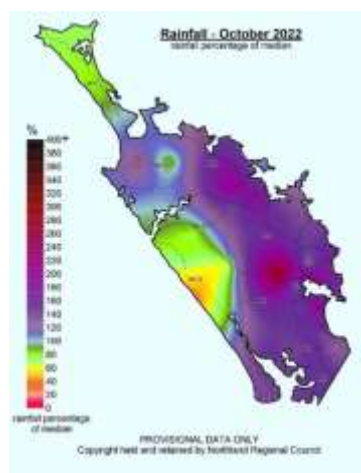
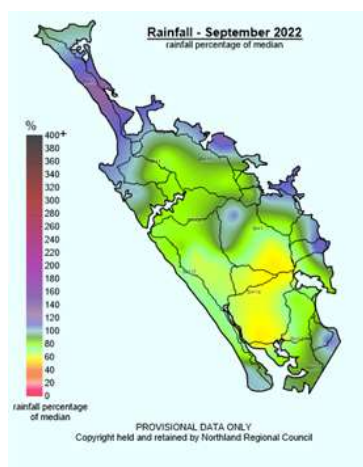
Data Automation Project

The research and development phase of the data automation project is now complete. The output from this phase was a software scripts which detect and repair irregular stage (water level) data. For example:

- Spike detection and removal
- Flatline detection and removal
- Gap detection and repair
- Smoothing Ramping of data
- Quality coding to NEMS

Hydrology

Rainfall



- Most of Northland received less than the expected rainfall total for September 2022, with a regional average of 85%, and more than the expected rainfall total for October, with a regional average of 138%.

- In a reversal to September 2022, October 2022 saw drier areas to the west and north while eastern and southern areas received the most.
- Kai Iwi Lakes only recorded 39% of the October 2022 median while Waipao at Draffin Road, west of Whangārei, recorded 297%. Several sites around Whangārei exceeded 200%, including Waitangi at Wiroa Road.

Rivers



River flows for September 2022

- River flows show a similar pattern to rainfall, with most of the Far North and Eastern catchments recording above normal or normal flow for September 2022.
- Central, western and southern catchments generally recorded below normal flows, with a few exceptions (such as the Hakaru at Topuni river station in the South recording above normal flow for September 2022).
- October 2022 flows were not available at the time of reporting.

Groundwater



Groundwater Levels for September

- Groundwater levels in our primary monitored aquifers were normal to above normal throughout Northland, except Ruawai which was lower than normal for September 2022.
- October 2022 groundwater levels were not available at the time of reporting.

Seasonal climate Outlook

A summary of NIWA's Seasonal Climate Outlook for October to December 2022 for Northland:

- Temperatures are very likely to be above average (70% chance)
- Rainfall totals are about equally likely to be near normal (40% chance) or above normal (35% chance)
- Soil moisture levels and river flows are most likely to be near normal (45% chance)

The full probability breakdown:

	Temperature	Rainfall	Soil moisture	River flows
Above average	70	35	35	35
Near average	25	40	45	45
Below average	05	25	20	20

POLICY AND PLANNING

Freshwater Plan Change

The Policy and Planning Team is continuing to develop draft text for the freshwater plan change in conjunction with internal staff workshop in early December and then to Council / TTMAC workshops in 2023.

The Primary Sector Liaison Group has provided council staff with their final report (October) which provides advice to council on freshwater management issues pertinent to the primary sector.

The Tangata Whenua Water Advisory Group (TWWAG) has been working with consultants on their recommendations on the freshwater plan change from a tangata whenua perspective (Stage 2 Recommendations Report). The report was presented to the Te Taitokerau Māori and Council to the iwi and hapu members of the TTMAC Working Party in October and the further presentation is to be held in November to confirm endorsement of the report. TWWAG has also begun their work on case studies (Wairua River, Aupōuri Aquifer, Poroti Springs, Hikurangi Repo, Whitikī ngā Punawai ō Hokianga, and the six Te Mana o te Wai projects funded by MfE in Te Taitokerau), with the findings due in December.

The next phase of communications began early November, with a focus on awareness raising, directing people to NRC's website (which has updated information about freshwater), and asking people to share their views on freshwater and what improvements they think should be made.

National Policy Statement – Highly Productive Land

The government has released the NPS – HPL to address concerns over the loss of productive land throughout the country. The NPS was released on the 19 September 2022 and comes into effect from 17 October 2022. The key matter for regional councils is the requirement to map land within the region that is within the general rural or rural production zone, has a land use capability class of 1-3 and is not already identified for future residential development (regional councils can include other areas considered to be highly productive). The mapping is required to be undertaken in consultation with district councils and tangata whenua. NRC has 3 years to prepare the maps and notify changes to the Regional Policy Statement to incorporate them. Consent authorities are to apply the NPS-HPL to Class 1-3 land zoned rural production / general rural in the interim. Once the maps are finalised, the district councils will need to adopt them and prepare supporting objectives, policies and rules.

Pricing agricultural emissions

In October 2022 the government released a consultation document on pricing agricultural emissions. The proposals are based on a version of the farm level, split-gas levy pricing released by He Waka Eke Noa in May 2022, but proposes modifications largely on the basis of advice from the Climate Change Commission. Proceeds from the levy are to be used for system administration, a dedicated Māori fund and for research and development with oversight by an advisory group made up of Māori and sector representatives. The government is aiming to introduce agricultural emissions

pricing from 2025 – in the event the farm level approach is not achievable by this date, an interim processor-level levy is proposed. Submission close 18 November and staff have not submitted on the proposal.

Proposed Regional Plan Appeals

Staff continue to work to resolve the remaining appeals on the Proposed Regional Plan for Northland. Key points arising since the last report include:

- **Topic 1 Coastal activities** - Appeal parties reached agreement, resolving appeals on a number of objectives, policies and rules for managing activities in the coastal marine area (CMA). The court has accepted the proposal and issued a consent order in September. This consent order resolves approximately half the appealed provision controlling activities within the CMA. The remaining coastal appeal points are largely tied up with appeals on Outstanding Natural Landscapes and management of Significant Bird Areas / Significant Ecological Areas.
- **Topic 1 Significant Ecological Areas / Significant Bird Areas** – These appeals are centred around how the Proposed Regional Plan manages activities in mapped areas with high ecological value. Council recently circulated a revised proposal to the parties, which was well received. Staff will continue discussions with the one appellant that does not support the proposal, with a view to resolve this matter out of court.
- **Topic 17 Outstanding Natural Landscapes** – Discussions with the appeal parties are ongoing.

8.2.6 BIOSECURITY

INCURSIONS

Spring and summer are traditionally the busy period for new pests and biosecurity responses with higher volumes of people out and about, increased movement of goods and the growth lifecycles of pests and diseases. As such, the Incursions team is gearing up to ensure that we have the systems and processes in place to ensure we can respond promptly should anything occur.

The team met with Ministry for Primary Industries (MPI) response groups and other industry partners in mid-October to foster working relationships and share response data.

Special Projects

Foot and Mouth Disease (FMD) Planning Update.

Biosecurity staff have been liaising closely with MPI as they undertake the review of the FMD 'All of Government Response Plan' to ensure that Northland Regional Council (NRC) is up to date with any developments. Consultation on a policy document is expected in the coming months. Staff met with MPI on 20 October with FMD as one of the agenda items.

Wallabies

Two separate reports of wallabies were received in October. The first located in a small gravel pit in Waipoua forest, and the second at Pukenui forest. A ground search was undertaken at both locations with scat samples collected for further analysis from Waipoua. Trail cameras have been set in Waipoua to monitor the site for several weeks. A detector dog is currently being organised for additional surveillance. Signage will be set up at Pukenui forest to encourage the reporting of any additional sightings and at this stage there have been no further reports.

A staff member is attending the National Wallaby Eradication Programme annual conference this week.

WILD ANIMAL CONTROL

Feral Deer

A two-day wānanga based on Te Ao Māori approaches to pest animal management was held at Te Rāwhiti Marae Russell on the 6-7 October. The wānanga was well received and attended by the local hapū and kaitiaki rangers.



The delivery of the wānanga was part of the contract with NRC and Trap and Trigger with a brilliant narrator (who did the tutoring) and preceded the Russell sika faeces DNA survey work which was completed after 10 days hard graft in difficult weather conditions. Results of the DNA analysis is expected to be confirmed in the new year.

Seven of the students from the wānanga joined the Trap and Trigger Crew for the survey work and all of them indicated they would like to be doing more of the mahi.

Feral Deer Response

On 26 October 16 deer escaped from the Kamo Wildlife Sanctuary. Eleven animals were destroyed by the local farmers and sanctuary staff and the remaining five deer are being traced.

On 27 October a lone deer was reported in Waipū and verified via video footage. Work is underway working in partnership with the farmers in the area to establish the home range of this animal to eliminate it.

KAURI PROTECTION

Kauri Museum 60th Anniversary Festiva - 15 October 2022.

The first time multi agencies have joined forces to attend an event for Kauri Protection. Northland Regional Council was supported by members of the Auckland Council, engaging with public and answering questions.



PARTNERSHIPS

Northland Regional Council – Kiwi Coast partnership

Kiwi Coast had a busy September and October including hosting the Northland Kiwi hui in collaboration with Save the Kiwi Trust and a new group was established, 'Pests Off Puhipuhi'.



Over 120 keen kiwi savers gathered to share knowledge, research results, and discuss ideas and strategies at the Northland Kiwi Hui, October 2022.

Other key mahi included a refresh of the Northland Brown Kiwi Drought Response and Action Plan to better prepare for expected droughts and the negative impacts of these on kiwi, planning for the year ahead by the Whangārei mustelid control network, and the development of new technology with early plans in place to hold a workshop with Steve Allan for his new SA4 Ferret Trap in November, and progress continuing with Ocean Sense to develop AI software for analysing Kiwi listening device data.

High Value Area (HVA) and Community Pest Control Area (CPCA) Highlights:

Kiwi chicks have been hatching all over Northland with Whangārei Heads and Tutukaka HVAs recording their first kiwi chicks for the season and the first known kiwi chick hatched within the Kiwi Link HVA (within the Owhiwa Landcare area) in September:



First KiwiLink HVA kiwi chick - Sept 2022



CC the latest kiwi chick from Tutukākā HVA

Staff and communities also conducted a significant number of toxin operations across many of the HVA and CPCA projects this month, including within the Tutukākā HVA, Piroa-Brynderwyn HVA and a range of CPCAs in Western Northland. These operations have been timed to be most effective at targeting possums and rats but also protecting hatching kiwi and other vulnerable native birds. Staff also supported a DOC-led Waipoua Forest aerial 1080 operation in October by providing funding towards ground control for possums on the private land adjoining the forest.

The new Piroa Conservation Trust was successfully registered in October and the new trustees are setting their sights on the strategic direction of their organisation in collaboration with key stakeholders. Work has also started on a presence/absence survey for kiwi using acoustic devices across the Piroa-Brynderwyn HVA. Early results indicate kiwi are present as far east as Bream Tail farm to just west of Marunui Conservation Area, however this monitoring project is in its early stages and there is still a lot of area left to cover.

The Whangarei Heads Weed Action Native Habitat Restoration Trust (WANHRT) completed the first phase of their Whaka Ora Reotahi project. This project has been a flagship landscape scale operation for WANHRT. Through successful funding bids the group secured \$50,000 lotteries grant and \$15,000 of Whangarei District Council funding. This funding has enabled pest plant control to be undertaken across the majority of the 65 hectares of Reotahi, one of Whangārei Heads iconic maunga. Large swathes of wild ginger, jasmine, queen of the night, moth plant, banana passionfruit, cotoneaster and elaeagnus have been controlled, releasing native plants and seedling. This work was undertaken by the Aki Tai Here contract team, equating to 1400 hours of control work on the maunga. WANHRT is completing further funding applications to secure follow up control work on the maunga.



Fields of wild ginger being cleared on Reotahi.



*One of the Aki Tai Here team
releasing natives from a wall of jasmine*

In the far north, new relationships are being created in pest management in Te Hiku, focusing on pest eradication on the Aupōuri Peninsula. Biosecurity staff are also assisting Ngāi Takoto and Te Rūnanga Nui o Te Aupōuri to implement pest management in their rohe.

Tiakina Whangārei – Urban Pest Control

September and October were dominated with planning for the Parihaka BioBlitz which will be held in November, as well as conducting doing predator surveys in Parihaka with the support of NorthTec students. Tiakina Whangārei project staff also held a stall at the Whangārei Growers' Market to promote urban pest control.



Tiakina Whangārei project staff promote urban pest control at the Whangārei Growers' Market – Sept 2022.

PREDATOR FREE

Predator Free Whangārei

PF2050 and mana whenua representatives of the Whangārei and Pēwhairangi Whānui project areas attended a wānanga in Whakatane, hosted by Korehāhā Whakahau, an iwi led Predator Free project.

Before the Whangārei Heads project moves into the Kauri Mountain and Manaia landscapes, we will be reviewing our formal engagement process with Whangārei hapū and community. This is with the objective of forming a steering group with the appropriate people from the community and mana whenua who will be more closely aligned with the project priorities and outcomes.

We will be seeking guidance from the NRC Māori Engagement team as well as project Tikanga field advisor. This requires careful consideration so tikanga can be respected whilst project delivery momentum is maintained. While this is being worked through, the field team will shift focus to other tasks that won't compromise our position with mana whenua.

The operational part of the project is entering an exciting phase as the team moves from knockdown to mop up in initial working blocks. This represents a huge effort by the field team who have battled pampas, gorse & bad weather to maintain weekly servicing of eradication infrastructure. Currently a detection network of 28 live capture traps and 69 cameras are active in mop up areas. Possum detections from cameras has dramatically reduced, showing that our knockdown has been successful.

Predator Free Pēwhairangi (Bay of Islands)

The first collective hui between all project partners from each peninsula was held successfully at The Landing. This was a meaningful way for each group to meet all key project partners involved in the development and implementation of the PF2050 Pēwhairangi Whānui kaupapa. It was also a good opportunity to meet kanohi ki te kanohi with PF2050 Ltd



Pēwhairangi Whānui group hui held at 'The Landing'

MARINE BIOSECURITY

Hull surveillance

Between 08 August 2022 and 02 November 2022, the Hull Surveillance Programme surveyed 95 vessels. There were 12 incidents of *Sabella spallanzanii* (Mediterranean fanworm) and one incident of *Styela clava* (clubbed tunicate) found on vessel hulls. All of these incidents were detected in harbours where these species are already known to have established populations, staff work with these vessel owners to ensure that these species are not spread further.

Table 1: Hull Surveillance Programme Results to 03 November 2022

Hull Surveillance Programme Results	Total this period	Total YTD
Number of vessels surveyed this period	95	181
% Pathways Plan Compliance if Moving (all vessels) *	50.9	57.2
Vessels found with Marine Pests		
<i>Sabella spallanzanii</i> (fanworm)	12	13
<i>Styela clava</i> (clubbed tunicate)	1	1
<i>Undaria pinnatifida</i> (Japanese kelp)	0	0
<i>Eudistoma elongatum</i> (Australian droplet tunicate)	0	4
<i>Pyura doppelganger</i> (sea squirt)	0	0

* This is the percentage of vessels surveyed that complied with the acceptable level of 'light fouling' as defined in the Marine Pathway Plan. Note: actual compliance is higher given not all these vessels will move from one designated place to another.

NRC/MPI Investigation – Goby Trapping Matapōuri Estuary

NRC have been assisting MPI with investigations to determine if there has been a possible range extension of a non-indigenous fish species, the Australian flatback mangrove goby (*Mugilogobius platynotus*) in Matapōuri. The flatback mangrove goby is a small fish that was recently identified by experts from Te Papa Museum for the first time in New Zealand in Ngunguru this April. As part of these investigations, NRC has been connecting with hapū and local communities in Matapōuri to involve them in the process and gather local knowledge.

NRC staff and kaitiaki have conducted several trapping exercises with no non-indigenous fish being detected.



Hapū, MPI, NRC and Te Pūkenga representatives work together to identify fish captured in Matapōuri estuary

National Workshops and Conferences

A representative from the marine biosecurity team attended two workshop this month, the first being the New Zealand Marina Operators Association (NZMOA) annual conference and the second being a workshop to begin an operational research project the Cawthron Institute are conducting on behalf of MPI to develop treatments for marine pest eradication. At the NZMOA conference, staff from NRC and BOPRC presented to marina and haul out operators (~150 individuals) to introduce the Marine Vessel Portal (MVP) the Top of the North collaboration are developing. The MVP is a centralised vessel database that maps and records vessel movements between regional boundaries. This resource will be used by industry and Regional Councils to manage biosecurity risks and will enable operators to protect their structures.

The workshop at the Cawthron Institute initiated a 4-year project that aims to identify and test operationally scalable treatment protocols for use in marine pest response situations. The researchers have agreed and are excited to trial new techniques in Ōpua such as encapsulating technologies that will compliment NRC on-going practical eradication efforts.



Marine biosecurity managers from NRC and Bay of Plenty Regional Council present at the NZMOA annual conference

Marine Biosecurity in the Pacific Workshops, French Polynesia

One of the NRC's marine biosecurity team went to French Polynesia to participate in a two-day workshop on marine biosecurity research and management for French Polynesia and the wider South Pacific. Representatives from New Zealand, Australia, Fiji, Spain, and French Polynesia were in attendance representing a range of industry, government agencies and scientific/research institutes. This workshop provided the opportunity to showcase the legacy and leanings of NRC's marine biosecurity programme and also the challenges that Northland and New Zealand face in this sector with potential application to the wider Pacific. Time was dedicated to creating a plan as to better prepare French Polynesia to have marine biosecurity systems in place. Additionally, to the workshops, the delegation from New Zealand (including NRC staff) were invited to visit the port authority offices in Papeete and tour the facilities of the CRILOBE research centre in Moorea.

*Resident and volunteer Eileen Alexander
with the largest of the three seedlings of
bat-wing passionflower she discovered*



Attendees from the workshop held in Papeete with the President of French Polynesia.

PEST PLANTS

A second discovery of seedlings the eradication species bat-wing passionflower (*Passiflora apetala*) was found at Whangārei Heads by a resident and local volunteer. This area is outside of the known infestation area in Whangārei and the source of the seedlings remains unknown. Further sponsored Facebook posts, media coverage and mail drops are underway to try and raise the profile of this discovery in the hopes of encouraging further reports. Additional survey and door-to-door canvassing is also planned.

Six other new eradication species sites were also confirmed; a large new mile-a-minute sighting in Paihia, a second site of spartina in the Mangawhai Harbour, and four Micky Mouse plant sites.

The only known Senegal Tea site in the region was inspected and a small area of re-growth treated.



The smothering growth form of mile-a-minute on display at the new site in Paihia Mile-a-minute

A weed workshop was run, in partnership with the Department of Conservation, for local iwi members and some rangitahi from Taipa Area School. A total of 17 participants attended and enjoyed a pot-luck lunch before some hands on practical in an area of dune revegetation at Ramp Rd, Lake Ohia.



Workshop participants working on identification



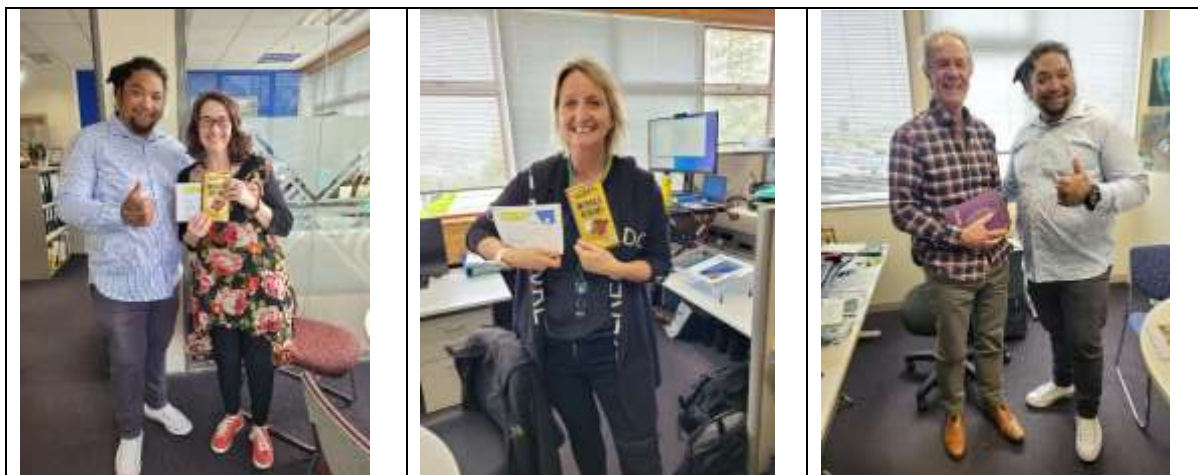
Taipa Area School students engaged in boneseed control on dunes at Ramp Rd.

8.2.7 GOVERNANCE AND ENGAGEMENT

MĀORI ENGAGEMENT

Te Wiki o Te Reo Māori 2022

This year we celebrated that for many of our staff, every week is Māori language week. Throughout Te wiki o te reo Māori, staff were invited to nominate from amongst their peers those who were leaders and advocates for Te Reo Māori. We received 15 nominations in total with some being recognised by as many as three of their peers. Of course, there was the Governance and Engagement PA, who runs our weekly Speed Te Reo class, some very dedicated staff who attend every week, some who have taken it upon themselves to enrol in te reo Māori classes in their own time and those who show leadership by encouraging and supporting their teams. Here are just a few of our champions of te reo Māori.





Pōwhiri for the new council

A Pōwhiri was held on Tuesday 18 October at Te Puna o Te Tauranga Marae, NorthTec - Te Pūkenga, to welcome our newly elected councillors and their whānau to ensure that the council induction commenced with the appropriate tikanga in recognition of our commitment to Te Tiriti o Waitangi. It was a significant occasion as many from near and afar attended to recognise and acknowledge the newly elected members, particularly the Te Raki.



*Councillors
being called onto
Te Puna o Te
Tauranga
Marae.*



*incoming
councillors
listening to
whaikōrero;*



The Māori Relationships Team, alongside other staff have also supported powhiri across the region for the new elected councillors for the Far North and Whangarei District Councils.

Far North District
Council councillors
and community
board members



Some of the newly elected Whangarei District councillors supported by two of the Te Tai o Tokerau Far North District councillors



Tū i te ora Scholarships

Applications for Northland Regional Council's Tū i te ora Scholarships have opened for 2022, with this year's recipients set to receive paid work experience and financial assistance for the first time since the scholarships launched. Council is awarding six scholarships, each including \$4000 to assist with study costs, plus a paid full-time work experience with NRC from mid-November 2023 to mid-February 2024.

This is the fourth year council is awarding the scholarships, which recognise, encourage and support students to undertake study that relates to council's environmental and regulatory functions, whilst contributing to council's vision 'Our Northland – together we thrive'.

The scholarships have a specific aim to build Māori capacity within Te Taitokerau, with three of the six scholarships earmarked for Māori who whakapapa to Te Taitokerau.

ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

Investment and Growth Reserve – Projects Report

Project	Update	Future developments/ reporting
Extension 350	Both final evaluation report and project completion report and were provided.	None. Project completed.
Grown Northland	Funding allocated to support this made at the JREDC meeting of 23 September. Letter from CEO outlining reporting requirements and payment schedule sent to Northland Inc. First of three tranche payments made.	Reporting for work completed in period ending 31 December due end of January.

Other Work Undertaken

- **Joint Regional Economic Development Committee (JREDC)** – Held the final meeting of the current JREDC and quarterly workshop with Northland Inc on 23 September.
- **Northland Economic Quarterly** – September issue prepared, distributed and available online at <https://www.nrc.govt.nz/media/twefeu13/economic-quarterly-issue-35-september-2022.pdf>
The annual section reports on the tourism sector data for the year ended June 2022 while the

spotlight section examines some of the recent statistics for Northland. The NEQ is available through council's eNewsletter service, sign-up at: www.nrc.govt.nz/enewsletters

- **Te Ōhanga Rautaki Whānui o Te Tai Tokerau (Regional Economic Development Strategy)** – Attended the third meeting of the Steering Group and provided support in the workshop conversation. Organised the Local Government work stream meetings for the regional economic development strategy work that took place in September and October.
- **Northland Walking & Cycling Strategy Forum** – Organised meeting to discuss actions, updates and other issues in relation to the implementation of the strategy.
- **Regional Projects Reserve** – on-going discussions with Te Taitokerau Water Trust and Marsden Maritime Holdings regarding the status of projects that funding from the RPR has been allocated to. The funding agreement in relation to the investment into the Kaipara Water Scheme is being developed in November.
- **Freshwater Management Plan** – Working closely with the policy & planning team to estimate the costings of various mitigation options for improved water quality in Northland.
- **Flood protection** – provided economic benefit data to support the assessment of the Awanui and Whangatane spillway upgrade.

ONLINE CHANNELS

Most popular content on Facebook: A post regarding Manaia Kindergarten becoming Enviroschool silver. (25 October 2022). Reaching 4,785, with engagement 986.

*Engaged – number of people who 'reacted', commented, or shared the post

Key Performance Indicators	Jun-22	Jul-22	Aug-22	Sep-22	Oct-22
WEB					
# Visits to the NRC website	26,946	50,527	57,337	24,318	41,197
E-payments made	14	77	50	25	17
# subscription customers (cumulative)	1,365	1,364	1,359	1,353	1,352
SOCIAL MEDIA (CUMULATIVE)					
# Twitter followers	1,590	1,591	1,593	1,595	1,601
# NRC Facebook followers	10,682	10,817	10,884	11,045	11,101
# NRC Overall Facebook Reach	102,991	117,053	75,741	43,071	134,778
# NRC Engaged Daily Users	5,011	8,692	5,195	2,800	5,098
# CDEM Facebook fans	26,305	26,717	27,049	27,186	27,231
# CDEM Overall Facebook Reach	6,569	203,071	120,694	64,756	36,666
# CDEM Engaged Daily Users	147	25,258	12,890	5,482	2,318
# Instagram followers	1,547	1,557	1,559	1,568	1,575

ENVIROSCHOOLS / EDUCATION

Wai Fencing – Far North course held

The Enviroschools Wai Restoration project engages young people and local communities in the restoration of waterways and biodiversity. The Wai Fencing project stream develops skills and provides NCEA qualifications for building fences to exclude stock from waterways and other areas of biodiversity significance. On 2 Sept (skills day) and 28 Sept (assessment day), senior students from Kaitaia College, Northland College, Ōkaihau College, Taipa Area School and Te Rangi Aniwaniwa took part in the Far North course at Rangiputa Station. The assessment day culminated in fencing off a farm waterway that will be planted in native riparian species. Council's Education team was supported by the Land Management team, Can Train NZ and local industry.



Dune lakes education days – Kai Iwi and Ruakākā

On 8 and 15 September, 'Getting to know your dune lakes days' were held at Lakes Taharoa and Ruakākā. Council's Biodiversity and Education teams joined local hapu in delivering 'action stations' focused on water quality, pest and native fish, tuna and dune lakes. Participating schools included: Bream Bay College and One Tree Point, Tinopai, Tangiterōia and Aranga Schools.



Discovering how healthy the water is at Lake Taharoa



One Tree Point School at Ruakākā dune lake.

Project Pest Control – Whangārei assessment day held

Project Pest Control (PPC) develops skills and provides NCEA qualifications in controlling possums, mustelids, rodents and feral cats. The course involves theory and in-field training, and career opportunities are investigated. On 29 Sept, the Whangārei PPC assessment day was held at Kiwi North. Participating schools include Bay of Islands College, Kamo High School, Mangakāhia Area School, Renew School, Ruawai College, Tauraroa Area School, Whangārei Boys' High School, and Whangārei Girls' High School. Councils Education and Biosecurity teams ran the event, supported by Can Train NZ and local industry.



Pete Graham assesses a raised leg-hold trap set.

Manaia Kindergarten celebrates Enviroschools Silver

As schools and centres grow in their sustainability learning and actions, they move through the Enviroschools stages of Bronze, Silver and Green Gold. On 18 October, Manaia Kindergarten (Parua Bay) celebrated becoming a Silver Enviroschool. From trapping rats and pumping rainwater, to felting kākahu and coastal hiko; Manaia Kindergarten is developing new projects and involving more people in its Enviroschools journey.



Congratulations Manaia Kindergarten!

Enviroschools communities facilitated

During September and October, despite the school holidays, Enviroschools Facilitators held 115 specific interactions with school and early childhood communities.

COMMUNICATONS

Media Liaison

In total, 23 media releases were created and distributed to media throughout Northland during the period covered. Topics included:

- New NRC chair elected
- Election results
- Tū i te ora scholarship
- Cultivation setback warning
- Litta Traps
- Dune Lakes
- Orchids flowering season underway.

Combined, this activity helped generate 165 items mentioning Northland Regional Council as reported by media monitoring agency Fuseworks.

Top five sources of Northland coverage were:

1. Northern Advocate (50)
2. Northland Age (9)
3. Kaipara Lifestyler (9)
4. Bay Chronicle, Northern News, Whangarei leader (7)
5. Whakaata Māori TV (6)



Freshwater Plan Change

The communications element of the Freshwater Plan Change continues to demand significant resourcing and is a key priority for the team. During the period, work to prepare for the launch of phase 2 (November) of the wider Freshwater Communication and Engagement Plan took place. Phase 2 is a feedback campaign aimed at testing what we have already been told is important about Freshwater in Northland. It communicates the following:

- provides information on what Northland's current baseline states are for freshwater
- communicates known public views on how they use freshwater
- seeks feedback on values people hold for freshwater (via web tool).

To support this the following activity took place:

- writing and design of 16-page brochure explaining freshwater plan and Te Mana o te Wai (to support thangata whenua engagement)
- design and all logistics to enable an online freshwater hui for thangata whenua (14 November)
- writing and design of one-page ad communicating key messages of phase 2
- writing and design of social media campaign – phase 2.

MARKETING AND ENGAGEMENT

Car Free Day Campaign

Car Free Day is a global event, celebrated in cities around the world and in 2022 was held on 21 September. A full marketing campaign was held around the event from 1- 21 September, including social media, a media release, posters, flyers, radio advertising and an ad on the digital billboard, in addition to internal communications with NRC staff via Express and the Wellbeing group. The campaign culminated with a public event held in the Vine Street car park on 21 September 2022 that included demonstrations of e-bikes and e-scooters, a coffee cart and opportunities for the public to interact with staff from Transport, Community Engagement and Climate Change.

The following measures were achieved:

- Bus travel in Whangārei increased by up to 25% on the day
- Over 200 people attended the public event
- c.78,000 people in Northland were reached via print media
- 1,515 people engaged with CityLink Facebook content, which was displayed 4,998 times
- 5% increase in CityLink Facebook page followers during the campaign period



1. Figure 2 NRC & NTA staff and contributors at Car Free Day 2022

Total Mobility Far North

This campaign is currently running, to promote Total Mobility in the Far North. Total Mobility offers subsidised travel with specialist transport providers to people who are unable to drive due to disability. Platforms used are a leaflet drop to householders, rest and retirement homes and doctors' surgeries in the Far North, targeted advertising in Far North publications both online and offline and social media.

CityLink Facebook campaign

This campaign is currently running, to increase engagement with the CityLink Facebook page, providing CityLink service users with a rapidly updated, easily accessible resource for bus updates and information. Platforms used are the CityLink Facebook page, social media ads, posters in bus shelters and on buses and radio coverage.

LOCAL GOVERNMENT OFFICIAL INFORMATION (LGOIMA) REQUESTS

Total LGOIMAs	September 2020 to October 2021 (2 months reporting)	September 2021 to October 2022 (2 months reporting)
	11 for September. 13 for October.	16 for September. 10 for October.
Number of LGOIMAs not responded to within 20 working days		1

REQ.613365 was late due to the ambiguous nature of the request, and because the same request was sent to Whangarei District Council, requiring some disentangling to determine who was responsible for which parts of the request.

CUSTOMER SERVICES

Telephone inbound call statistics and enquiries

	August	September	October
Call volume via Customer Services	2073	1733	1663
Average wait time	10secs	8.8secs	9 secs
Calls answered in under 30 seconds	2030	1707	1639

Telephone call volume over the last three years

	2019-2020	2020-2021	2021-2022
Call volume via Customer Services	20812	30566	23669

Mailroom email processing performance

	August	September	October
Mail processed	909	739	694

Satisfaction monitoring

Feedback cards, compliments, and complaints

Compliments received September	Total
Consents – Consents Administrator	1
City Link	1
Customer service	2
Total compliments recorded	4

Compliments received October	Total
Water Quality – Environmental Monitoring Office, Water Resources	1
Customer service	3
Total compliments recorded	4

Complaints received September	Total
• City Link	5
• Car free day	1
• Total Mobility	2
• Kiwi Cab	1
Total complaints recorded	9

These complaints are all resolved or referred.

Complaints received October	Total
• Destruction of Shellfish beds along Te Oneroa-a Tōhē	1
Total complaints recorded	1

This complaint is open.

8.2.8 COMMUNITY RESILIENCE

TRANSPORT

Regional Land Transport Plan 2021/2027

Section 13(1)(a) of the Land Transport Management Act 2003 states that “Every 6 financial years, each regional council must ensure that the relevant regional transport committee prepares, on the regional council's behalf, a regional land transport plan”.

Section 18CA(1) of the Land Transport Management Act 2003 stipulates that “A regional transport committee must complete a review of the regional land transport plan during the 6-month period immediately before the expiry of the third year of the plan”.

Prior to the Regional Land Transport Plan 2021/2027 – Three Year Review, the Regional Transport Committee will be required to decide and agree if changes to land transport related government policy, legislation and funding justify a review of the existing Regional Land Transport Plan 2021/2027 or if a full rewrite be required.

A review would take approximately six months to complete. A full rewrite with consultation would take approximately 18-24 months to undertake.

Regional Road Safety Action Plan

The Regional Road Safety Action Plan (RSAP) is an evidence-based document aligning with relevant Government Policy Statements, National Safety Strategies (Road to Zero Strategy), Regional Land Transport Plans, district road safety plans and includes data from the Community Risk Register, hospital statistics, etc.

The above assists in determining the prioritisation of road safety focus areas in the region. Specific actions will be defined and implemented along with agreed indicators to track the results.

The RSAP will be updated annually with the issues, actions and indicators being modified as needed to maximize benefits.

Bus Services

*BusLink figures are reported one month in arrears, due to the required information being unavailable at the time of the agenda deadline

Bus Link stats for August 2022 (revenue excl GST)	Actual	Budget	Variance	Year / Date Actual	Year / Date Budgeted	Variance
CityLink Passengers	35,982	30,085	5,897	60,689	55,825	4,864
CityLink Revenue	\$44,041	\$38,810	\$5,231	\$75,738	\$72,014	\$3,724
Mid North Link Passengers	162	180	-18	371	340	31
Mid North Link Revenue	\$576	\$798	-\$222	\$1,386	\$1,508	-\$122
Hokianga Link Passengers	70	54	16	123	102	21
Hokianga Link Revenue	\$399	\$376	\$23	\$700	\$710	-\$10
Far North Link Passengers	400	325	75	686	610	76
Far North Link Revenue	\$937	\$910	\$27	\$1,677	\$1,708	-\$31
Bream Bay Link Passengers	30	24	6	107	56	51
Bream Bay Link Revenue	\$215	\$173	\$42	\$760	\$403	\$357
Hikurangi Link Passengers	18	24	- 6	35	48	-13
Hikurangi Link Revenue	\$47	\$63	- \$16	86	126	- \$40

Bus Link stats for September 22 (revenue excl GST)	Actual	Budget	Variance	Year / Date Actual	Year / Date Budgeted	Variance
CityLink Passengers	34,871	28,886	5,985	95,560	84,711	10,849
CityLink Revenue	\$41,736	\$37,263	\$4,473	\$117,473	\$109,277	\$8,196
Mid North Link Passengers	205	180	25	576	520	56
Mid North Link Revenue	\$600	\$798	-\$198	\$1986	\$2306	-\$320
Hokianga Link Passengers	82	54	28	205	156	49
Hokianga Link Revenue	\$392	\$376	\$16	\$1,092	\$1,085	\$7

Bus Link stats for September 22 (revenue excl GST)	Actual	Budget	Variance	Year / Date Actual	Year / Date Budgeted	Variance
Far North Link Passengers	406	305	101	1,092	915	177
Far North Link Revenue	\$977	\$854	\$123	\$2,655	\$2,562	\$ 93
Bream Bay Link Passengers	51	30	21	158	86	72
Bream Bay Link Revenue	\$229	\$216	\$13	\$989	\$620	\$369
Hikurangi Link Passengers	21	24	-3	56	72	-16
Hikurangi Link Revenue	\$29	\$78	-\$49	\$115	\$203	-\$88

- Farebox figures include actual fares taken, the government 50% fare top up subsidy allocation and the SuperGold funding allocated to each service.
- The 50% fare subsidy is in place until 31 January when it will be replaced with Community Connect subsidy for Community Card holders.
- Passenger numbers include Adult / Child /SuperGold (where applicable)

Passengers Carried

The number of passengers carried on all services in September 2022 showed an increase.

For the Mid North Service, whilst passengers increased, the farebox revenue was below budget due to the increased number of SuperGold Card passengers carried at reduced fares.

Antisocial Behaviour

Unfortunately, incidents of antisocial behaviour continue at both the Rose Street Bus Terminus and on the Whangārei CityLink buses.

The plan to provide separate buses for school children direct from the residential areas to the relevant school in the mornings and return in the afternoons remains on hold due to the continuing driver shortage.

National Bus Driver Shortage

This issue continues to effect services nationwide and, while our services in the Mid and Far North can continue to operate all trips, the Whangārei CityLink have had a number of days where 2 or 3 trips have been dropped due to illness (covid) and driver shortages. Notices continue to be placed on the CityLink website, Facebook and TrackaBus advising the public of these disruptions.

Total Mobility (TM)

*Total Mobility Scheme figures are reported one month in arrears, due to the required information being unavailable at the time of the agenda deadline.

	Total Clients	Monthly Actual Expend	Monthly Budgeted Expend	Monthly Variance	Year / Date Actual Expend	Year / Date Budgeted Expend	Annual Variance
Whangārei							
August 2022	1277	\$34,623	\$28,750	\$5,873	\$71,231	\$57,500	\$13,731
September 2022	1277	\$32,621	\$28,750	\$3,871	\$97,922	\$86,250	\$11,672
Far North							
August 2022	95	\$587	\$13,750	-\$13,163	\$587	\$27,500	-\$26,913
September 2022	100	\$1,500	\$13,750	12,250	\$2,087	\$41,250	\$39,163

Client travel for the Far North Total Mobility Scheme is low due to this being a recently introduced initiative which will need time to grow.

Promotion and advertising of the Scheme continues.

Road Safety Update

Fatalities Jan – Oct 2021	Far North	Whangārei	Kaipara	Northland	National
Local roads	4	2	2	8	146
State highways	6	3	7	16	121
TOTAL	10	5	9	24	267

Fatalities Jan – Oct 2022	Far North	Whangārei	Kaipara	Northland	National
Local roads	2	7	0	9	163
State highways	11	4	2	17	145
TOTAL	13	11	2	26	308

Motorcycle Safety - Ride Forever (R4E) Rider Training Update

2022/2023 year end was another COVID affected year

- R4E – 2019/2020 – 240 riders completed courses for that financial year.
- R4E – 2020/2021 – 186 riders completed courses for that financial year.
- R4E – 2021/2022 – 182 riders have completed courses for this financial year just completed.
- R4E – 2022/2023 - Financial YTD – 50
 - Bronze Course 21
 - Silver Course 16
 - Gold Course 13

ACC Ride Forever (R4E) Motorcycle Safety Awareness Month (MAM)



Northland events included -

- On Saturday 24 September North Coast Honda held a “Biker Safety Expo” as part of the events during Motorcycle Awareness Month. As part of the Expo riders could:
 - Chat to Ride Forever course trainers who were registering riders to courses
 - View a range of motorcycles – including a 1918 Triumph, a 1924 Harley Davidson, a Harris and Honda racing bike plus a Britten V1000 racing bike
 - Have a mechanic do a visual bike check
 - Go in the draw for an Alpine Star air vest valued at \$1,400.00

- Obtain discounts on other riding clothing
- Through-out September, and extended through the month of October, riders were able to receive a \$150.00 trade-in when purchasing a new helmet.
- It is estimated that up to 300 people visited North Coast Honda for the Expo.
- Thirty riders signed up to a Ride Forever course. The trainers also mentioned there were a number of riders also signing up for their Basic Handling Skills or Competency Based Training Assessment course.
- Nine riders took up the opportunity to have their bike mechanically checked
- The Vintage Motorcycle Club operated a BBQ and raised \$370.00 in donations for the Rescue Helicopter



Air-vest giveaway sign-up



Some of the riders



Helmet trade-in



Britten V1000



Harris and Honda racing bikes

This event was made possible by the Team at North Coast Honda, Northland Road Safety Trust, Mediaworks, Northland Regional Council, Ride Forever providers – ProRider and AA, Vintage Motorcycle Club and ACC for supporting this event.

Waka Kotahi & NZ Police Road Safety Promotion/Media

Themes for September / October were - Drugs, Speed, Motorcycling & Safe Vehicles, Distractions.

EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT

Following the flooding response of 17-18 August, a multi agency debrief was held on 22 September to capture outcomes and opportunities. These findings will be reported to the next Northland CDEM Coordinating Executive Group (CEG) meeting to be held on 29 November 2022.

This month staff attended the Lifelines Utilities Forum in Queenstown, a Māori in Emergency Management Wānanga, Te Kotahitanga o ngā Tai (co-hosted by mana whenua, Ngāti Toa, Te Āti Awa and NEMA) and the NZ Emergency Communications Conference in Wellington 17-19 October. The wānanga provided an opportunity to strengthen relationships and partnerships and identify how we can continue to build our combined emergency management capability. There is still a lot of work to do in this space and staff are continuing to look for, and capitalise on, opportunities to ensure we are working in true partnership with iwi and hapū.

The previous CDEM Group and Coordinating Executive Group meetings were held on 6 September 2022.

MARITIME

This month, the Kioreroa Reach beacon replacement project was completed well ahead of the scheduled completion date of 31 March 2023, and within budget. These beacons have been *in situ* for many decades and all ten have now been removed and replaced by more suitable plastic buoys which reduce damage to vessels in event of collision. When these aged beacons were damaged, they were expensive to remove by contractors who were not always available or in the region. The new buoys will be maintained by the Maritime department during their regular maintenance programme and any incidents will be able to be rectified promptly.

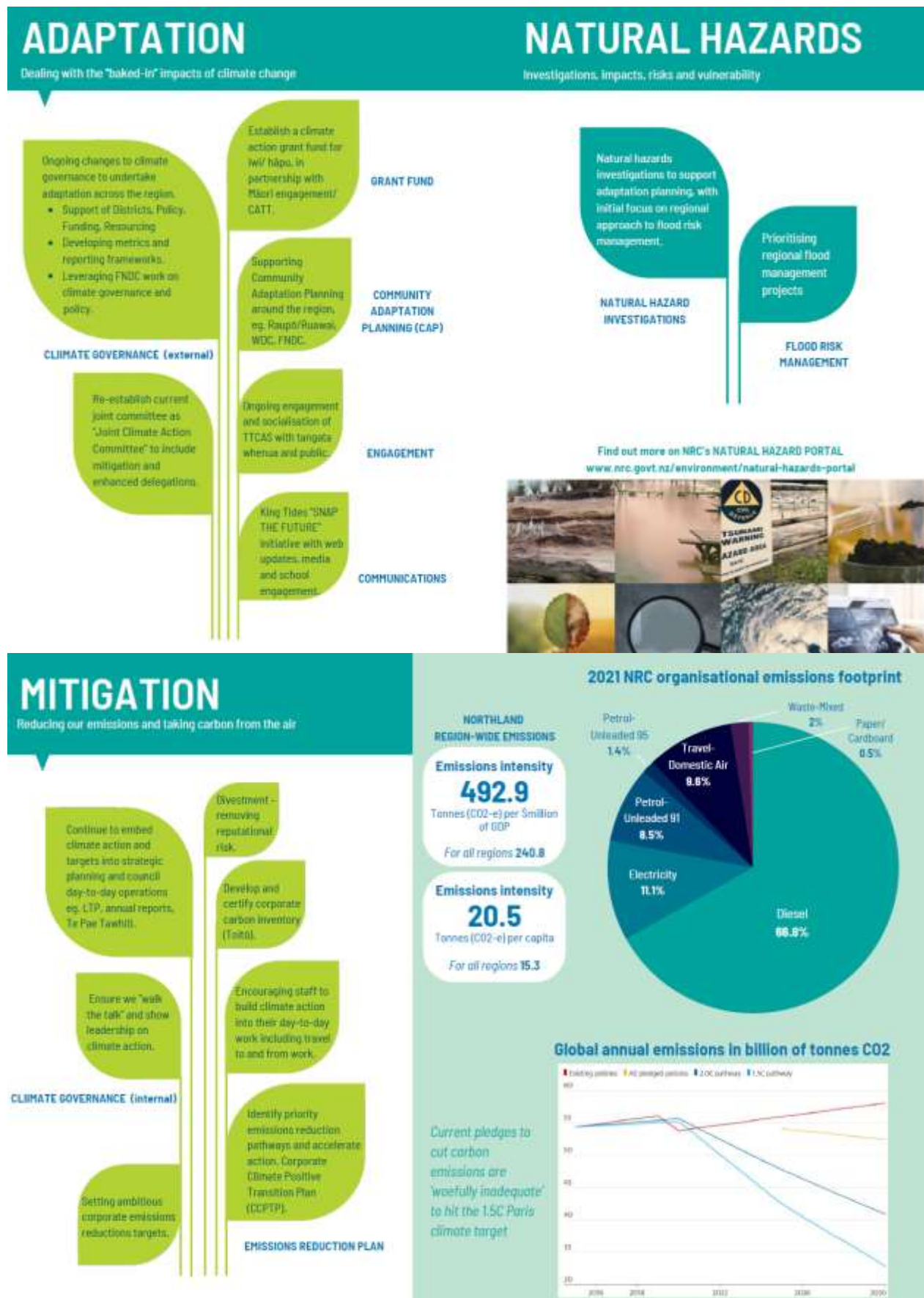
With the return of cruise ships to the Bay of Islands, the Harbourmaster's team has resumed pilotage services. With New Zealand's borders closed due to COVID for the past two seasons, cruise ships had been unable to visit. The industry has returned strongly with two ships successfully piloted into the Bay during October. Fifty-four ships are booked this summer and 89 are scheduled for the next 2023/24 season.

RIVERS

Work Streams	Status	Comments
Awanui Flood Scheme Upgrade	Year 3 of 3 year accelerated programme	Rock-stabilization Dunn Street section. We expect earthworks – Northern Benching to begin as soon as ground conditions are favourable
Otīria/Moerewa Flood Mitigation Spillway and Bridge	Year 3 of 3 year accelerated programme	Phase 2 Construction scheduled to start 9 January after Māori Land Court appeals period. Phase 3 Contract awarded. Mobilization early November

CLIMATE ACTION OVERVIEW

An overview of the climate action and natural hazards team activities is attached. This was presented to incoming councillors at their induction on 2 November 2022.



MITIGATION

Reducing our emissions and taking carbon from the air

CLIMATE GOVERNANCE (internal)

Continue to embed climate action and targets into strategic planning and council day-to-day operations eg. LTP, annual reports, Te Pae Tawhiti.

Ensure we "walk the talk" and show leadership on climate action.

EMISSIONS REDUCTION PLAN

Identify priority emissions reduction pathways and accelerate action, Corporate Climate Positive Transition Plan (CCPTP).

Encouraging staff to build climate action into their day-to-day work including travel to and from work.

Develop and certify corporate carbon inventory (Taitā).

Investment – removing reputational risk.

2021 NRC organisational emissions footprint

NORTHLAND REGION-WIDE EMISSIONS

Emissions intensity
492.9
Tonnes (CO₂-e) per \$million of GDP

For all regions **240.8**

Emissions intensity
20.5
Tonnes (CO₂-e) per capita

For all regions **15.3**

Global annual emissions in billion of tonnes CO₂

Current pledges to cut carbon emissions are 'woefully inadequate' to hit the 1.5C Paris climate target

Mitigation

Certification of our carbon inventory is nearing completion with Toitū. This is a critical first step in enabling us to baseline our emissions and plot a path forward to reduce our own footprint, show leadership and enact effective emissions reduction action.

Adaptation

- The Water Resilience Fund (\$500k p.a.) is nearly fully allocated for the next two financial years.
- A review of the Regional Policy Statement (RPS) to see how it compares against climate action best practice is about to commence. The RPS and its subsidiary documents (including regional plans and district plans) is a key enabler for climate action in the region.
- A King Tides initiative “Snap the future” will commence with the highest spring tides (king tides) in the early new year. This is one of a number of important communication initiatives being worked up to foster discussion and encourage climate action. King tides are analogous to what a certain amount of sea level rise will look like in a climate charged future.

Natural Hazards

The Natural Hazards function of council has been merged with the Climate Action team. Key investigations underway include:

- an update of the Whangārei CBD river flood catchment hydraulic model
- a new detailed hydraulic model of the Raupō Drainage scheme to support the Community Adaptation Planning process underway there (see <https://www.kaipara.govt.nz/adaptive-pathways>)
- Progressive updates to priority river catchment models
- The new Natural Hazards Portal has been well received and staff have been nominated for an award under the Association of Local Government Information Managers (ALGIM) - see <https://www.nrc.govt.nz/environment/natural-hazards-portal/>
- A key project for this financial year will be undertaking a project that teases and develops out a consistent, equitable, future proof way for prioritising and funding flood risk management action. This work is currently being scoped.

Policy Updates

Staff are involved in reviewing MfE guidance about how RMA plans and policies (and potentially consents) will need to reflect both the National Adaptation Plan and Emissions Reduction Plan. Direct engagement is also occurring with MfE about the pros and cons of our joint mahi developed and set out in the Te Taitokerau Climate Adaptation Strategy.

Staff are also involved in engagement with central government about adaptation funding and continue to engage through multiple channels with officials in the development of the Climate Adaptation Bill (scheduled for late 2023).

Climate policy is a continuously evolving area with the potential to have far reaching effects for our environment and our communities – this is occurring nationally across nearly all sectors and globally. COP27 (the 27th IPCC Conference of Parties) is occurring in Egypt this month. Prior to the meeting two key reports have been released that again stress the need for rapid, more urgent action:

1. on mitigation (the Emissions Gap report, see <https://www.unep.org/resources/emissions-gap-report-2022>). This report suggests we are on track for 2.8 degrees of warming by the end of this century with current policies in place – far and away exceeding the Paris target of 1.5. degrees. Significant, rapid transformation is required to minimise the likely disastrous impacts expected in a warmer world.

2. On adaptation (the Adaptation Gap report, see <https://www.unep.org/resources/adaptation-gap-report-2022>). This report notes that climate risks are increasing as warming accelerates. Globally, efforts in adaptation planning, financing and implementation are not keeping pace with the growing risks – creating an adaptation gap.

8.2.9 KAIPARA MOANA REMEDIATION

- The Annual Report for Year 2, the first full year of KMR operations, was submitted successfully to the Ministry for the Environment (MfE) in line with Deed of Funding requirements.
- The Annual Report showed that less than two years after the signing of the MOU, efforts to revitalise the mauri of the Kaipara Moana are scaling up rapidly:

Ngā Mahi Rauora, Ngā Whiwhinga - Year 2 results at a glance

KMR worked with 278 landowners to support:

- *278 sediment reduction plans (205 new plans, 41 carried over from Year 1, 32 in development)*
- *\$4.67m worth of sediment reduction projects*
- *238 km of new waterway fencing (82km completed, 156km committed)*
- *380,466 new plants to protect waterways (206,408 planted, 174,058 committed), surpassing previous annual records set in the catchment*
- *85 Ha of riparian and wetland margins newly planted or committed for planting*
- *over 40,000Ha of land covered by new sediment reduction plans, bringing the total to 52,000 Ha*

KMR invested in local businesses, communities and young people by:

- *accrediting 22 contractor businesses and 19 nurseries*
 - *training 38 Field Advisors, bringing the total to 51*
 - *creating over 60,000 hours of new work, with 34,000 more committed*
- The Deloitte financial audit of the KMR programme covered the first full year of KMR operations, and resulted in a satisfactory audit. Two minor notes of interest were recorded in the Audit report, involving small discrepancies related to the timing of transactions.
 - MfE, as primary funder of KMR, also ran a Validation process in parallel with the Audit to review KMR's non-financial reporting required under the Deed of Funding. This was also satisfactory, identifying only minor areas for improvement. As part of the Validation process, MfE signalled an opportunity to streamline and simplify validation processes for minor grants. KMR leadership will consider and action recommendations in 2023 and beyond, working closely with MfE.
 - Preparations continue for the 30 November boat trip out onto the Kaipara Moana with the Hon. David Parker and Kelvin Davis, and Joint Committee members. This will be followed by an Induction for the new KMR Joint Committee on 1 December, a field trip to see a KMR project site, and a scheduled Hui and Workshop.
 - Over the past 2 months the KMR team has also been busy operationally and engaging with our communities and partners:
 - The winter planting season wrapped up, with KMR supporting planting across the catchment from Manukapua Island, to Tinopai, Ruawai and on several marae-led projects.
 - Thanks to *Trees that Count* and their generous partners, we made available 23,000 free trees, helping Kaipara Uri and other landowners to take action.
 - We held a workshop with Fonterra to further develop our delivery model, hosted a team from Beef & Lamb NZ to progress a strategic partnership, toured regionally with Northland forestry partners, presented at the National Catchments Forum, signed an

MOU with the NZ Association of Resource Management to develop training and career pathways for our KMR Field Advisors, and spoke to rangatahi at the Dream Big careers pathway programme.

- We finalised our first joint project with the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust to 'lock in' the biodiversity gains from KMR funding, and we presented at a recent QEII event in Auckland.
- Our quarterly Partnership Forum brought together over 60 partners, and focusing on the science behind our work, te ao Māori projects and how we can better work together in 2023.
- We visited potential pilot sites in the Auckland region for impact investment, and progressed work with the Akina Foundation, Beca and MfE to identify highest benefit opportunities.
- We made available our first negotiated commercial discount (fence-wire), and progressed opportunities to remove plastics from the KMR supply chain working with homegrown alternatives.
- We spoke at various marae and community events about how people can get involved in KMR, visited several schools, and booked in further outreach in 2023.

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Nil

TITLE: Reporting on Long Term Plan 2021-2031 Performance Measures for Quarter One of the 2022/23 Year

From: Robyn Broadhurst, Corporate Planning Specialist

Authorised by Bruce Howse, Pou Taumatua – Group Manager Corporate Services, on 17
Group Manager/s: November 2022

Whakarāpopototanga / Executive summary

This report presents the results of council's long term plan key performance indicators for the first quarter of the 2022/23 financial year, being July to September inclusive.

Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendation

1. That the report 'Reporting on Long Term Plan 2021-2031 Performance Measures for Quarter One of the 2022/23 Year' by Robyn Broadhurst, Corporate Planning Specialist and dated 14 October 2022, be received.

Background/Tuhinga

The Long Term Plan 2021-2031 includes 31 key performance indicators that measure aspects of council's service provision across three activity areas:

- Te Taiao | Natural environment
- Manawaroa te hapori | Community resilience
- Hautūtanga ā rohe | Regional leadership

Council's Deputy Leadership Team have responsibility for analysing quarterly reporting at the end of each quarter to address any concerns, including a comprehensive analysis at the end of the financial year that will facilitate the 'deep-dive' by the Audit and Risk subcommittee.

Each performance measure provides a sample of the activity's performance. The frequency of reporting against measures varies, with the majority being reported annually at the end of the financial year. For information only, a full list of measures has been included as **Attachment 1** to this item.


There are four performance measures that we report on quarterly. Of these four, three have achieved their targets for the July – September quarter, and one has not. This report only provides details for that measure not achieved for quarter one:

Hautūtanga ā rohe | Regional leadership

3.1 Governance		
3.1 Council maintains effective, open and transparent democratic processes		
Performance measure	Target	2021/22 result
Percentage of official information requests that are responded to within 20 working days	100%	97.4% – not achieved One request (of 39) was not completed on time due to its uncertain nature and that it was also sent to the district council, therefore a delay occurred in determining which council was

		responsible for responding to which parts of the request.
--	--	---

Attachments/Ngā tapirihanga

Attachment 1: Performance measures [↓](#) 

Te Taiao | Natural environment

1.1 Science		
1.1.1 Information on water quantity and water resources, including rainfall, river flow, groundwater and flood levels, is made available		
1.1.2 Information on the life-supporting capacity of water (fresh and marine) is made available		
1.1.3 Information on the standards for ambient air quality is made available		
Performance measure	Target	Frequency of reporting
Percentage of time that flood-level monitoring is accurate (to enable flood warnings to be developed) and is made available to the community	100%	Biannually in Q2 and Q4
Percentage of NRC environmental networks monitored for water quality and quantity, and ecology, with results made available to the community	100%	Annually in Q4
Percentage of time that continuous monitoring of air sheds is achieved, with any exceedances of National Environmental Standards reported and made available to the community	100%	Quarterly
Percentage of data from routinely monitored sites that meets quality standards and is made available to the community within 12 months of collection	90% or more	Annually in Q4
1.2 Catchment management		
1.2 Improved water quality is advanced through advice and funding to support sustainable land management		
Number of subsidised poplar poles provided for erosion-prone land by the council-owned nursery	2021/22: 5,000	Annually in Q2
The percentage of Environment Fund allocation (in dollar value) that proceeds to completion of successful projects that meet council objectives	95% or more	Annually in Q4
Successful delivery of Kaipara Moana Remediation Project workplan milestones through the contribution of financial, governance, staff and technical support	100% of milestones (as set out in the project workplan)	Annually in Q4
Percentage of routinely monitored river sites with a Water Quality Index (WQI) score of 'Excellent' or 'Good'	Maintain or increase	Annually in Q4
1.3 Biodiversity		
1.3 Indigenous biodiversity and ecosystems are maintained and enhanced, particularly around our rivers, lakes, wetlands and coastal margins		
Number of plants provided through CoastCare programme	2021/22: 14,000	Biannually in Q2 and Q4
Number of top-ranked lakes identified in the Northland Lakes Strategy that are	20 lakes	Annually in Q4

under active management ¹ with stock excluded		
1.4 Biosecurity		
1.4.1 Community involvement in pest management is promoted in both urban and rural environments through successful implementation of initiatives in the regional pest management plan		
1.4.2 The introduction and spread of marine pests is slowed through inter-regional management		
Increase in hectares of land under Community Pest Control Area Plans (CPCAs) per annum	5,000ha annually	Biannually in Q2 and Q4
Survey at least 2000 vessel hulls for marine pests each year as part of marine biosecurity surveillance programme	2,000 hulls annually	Annually in Q4
1.5 Planning and policy		
1.5 Good management of Northland's environment is supported by up-to-date legislative planning documents based on sound evidence and processes		
Percentage of environmental planning legislative requirements achieved each year	100% of requirements met	Annually in Q4
1.6 Consents		
1.6 Processing and administering of resource consents is efficient and effective		
Percentage of all resource consent applications that are processed within the statutory timeframes	100%	Biannually in Q2 and Q4
1.7 Compliance monitoring		
1.7 Compliance monitoring of resource consents, and response to reported environmental incidents, is timely and effective		
Percentage of consents that are monitored as per the council's consent monitoring programme	90% or more	Biannually in Q2 and Q4
Percentage of environmental incidents reported to the Environmental Hotline resolved within 30 working days	80% or more resolved within 30 working days	Quarterly

Manawaroa te hapori | Community resilience

2.1 Flood protection		
2.1 Life and property are protected by the building, monitoring and maintenance of flood schemes		
Performance measure	Target	2021/22 result
Number of flood events occurring as a result of failures of flood protection systems below specified design levels, for the Awanui, Whangārei, Kāeo, Panguru and Otiria/Moerewa schemes	Zero	Annually in Q4
2.2 Climate change resilience		
2.2 Council provides proactive and coordinated planning for projected climate change and adaptation responses		

¹ Active management includes basic care standards for lakes: nutrient management, ecological monitoring, submerged weed surveillance, and weed and pest control if necessary

Development, delivery and implementation of key regional climate change plans and documents	2021/22: • NRC climate change strategy complete with high-level vision • Regional climate change risk assessment and adaptation strategy developed	Annually in Q4
2.3 Emergency management		
2.3 Communities are supported to understand, plan for and manage hazards and risks		
Percentage of engaged communities subject to significant hazards that are supported to develop community response plans to guide their responses	100%	Annually in Q4
2.4 Oil pollution response		
2.4 An efficient and responsive oil pollution response is maintained		
Maintain a regional oil spill response plan, including a minimum of 30 up-to-date trained responders	Maintain a minimum of 30 responders at all times	Annually in Q4
2.5 Harbour safety and navigation		
2.5 Regional navigational safety is maintained, and marine activities are safely managed		
Marine activities are safely managed, with nationally compliant Harbour Safety Management Systems that comply with the Port and Harbour Marine Safety Code operational safety management system ²	100%	Annually in Q4
2.6 Transport		
2.6 A resilient transport network is planned for and implemented, including passenger transport services		
Percentage of passengers surveyed on the Whangārei, Kaitiāia and Mid-North bus services that are satisfied with the overall service provided	90% or more from 3/3 measures	Annually in Q4
Achievement of key Northland Transport deliverables, measured as an aggregated score, for: - road safety - capital works programmes - maintenance programmes - response to customer services requests	Aggregated score for achievement of deliverables is greater than 75%	Annually in Q4

² Compliance with the Port and Harbour Marine Safety Code is measured by conducting an annual self-assessment and periodic peer review

Hautūtanga ā rohe | Regional leadership

3.1 Governance		
3.1 Council maintains effective, open and transparent democratic processes		
Performance measure	Target	2021/22 result
Percentage of official information requests that are responded to within 20 working days	100%	Quarterly
Percentage of time that elected members attend council meetings	90%	Quarterly
3.2 Māori relationships		
3.2 Provide information on water resources including rainfall, flood levels and ground water		
An independent Treaty health check is completed annually	Annual completion	Annually in Q4
All councillors and executive leadership team participate in annual core cultural competency training	100% compliance	Annually in Q4
3.3 Economic development		
3.3 Northland's economic wellbeing is enhanced by the coordination and delivery of economic development services, activities and funding across Northland		
Percentage of key performance indicators set out in Northland Inc's draft annual report that are achieved by 30 June each year	100%	Annually in Q4
3.4 Community engagement		
3.4 Communities are well informed about council's work, know how to get involved, and are engaged in council processes		
Percentage of residents surveyed who are satisfied with overall communication, community involvement and engagement	Maintain or increase	Annually in Q4
3.5 Customer services		
3.5 Council provides efficient and meaningful customer service		
Percentage of customers surveyed who are satisfied with the quality of service received following an interaction with council	Maintain or increase	Annually in Q4
3.6 Corporate excellence		
3.6 Corporate systems and investment are efficient and forward-thinking to support council activities		
Key project milestones for the council's technology solutions are met as per the project plan	2021/22: 40% of enterprise system modules implemented	Annually in Q4

TITLE: Business with the Public Excluded

Whakarāpopototanga / Executive Summary

The purpose of this report is to recommend that the public be excluded from the proceedings of this meeting to consider the confidential matters detailed below for the reasons given.

Ngā mahi tūtohutia / Recommendations

1. That the public be excluded from the proceedings of this meeting to consider confidential matters.
2. That the general subject of the matters to be considered whilst the public is excluded, the reasons for passing this resolution in relation to this matter, and the specific grounds under the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution, are as follows:

Item No.	Item Issue	Reasons/Grounds
9.1	Human Resources Report - September and October 2022	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of deceased natural persons s7(2)(a).
9.2	Purchase of Properties for Awanui Flood Scheme Upgrade	The public conduct of the proceedings would be likely to result in disclosure of information, the withholding of which is necessary to enable council to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations) s7(2)(i).

3. That the Independent Financial Advisors be permitted to stay during business with the public excluded.
-

Considerations

1. Options

Not applicable. This is an administrative procedure.

2. Significance and Engagement

This is a procedural matter required by law. Hence when assessed against council policy is deemed to be of low significance.

3. Policy and Legislative Compliance

The report complies with the provisions to exclude the public from the whole or any part of the proceedings of any meeting as detailed in sections 47 and 48 of the Local Government Official Information Act 1987.

4. Other Considerations

Being a purely administrative matter; Community Views, Māori Impact Statement, Financial Implications, and Implementation Issues are not applicable.